

Dray Tek

Vigor IPPBX 3510 Series



Your reliable networking solutions partner

User's Guide

Vigor*IPPBX3510/3500* Series User's Guide

Version: 1.0 Date: 18/09/2009



Copyright Information

Copyright Declarations	Copyright 2009 All rights reserved. This publication contains information that is protected by copyright. No part may be reproduced, transmitted, transcribed, stored in a retrieval system, or translated into any language without written permission from the copyright holders.		
Trademarks	 The following trademarks are used in this document: Microsoft is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corp. Windows, Windows 95, 98, Me, NT, 2000, XP, Vista and Explorer are trademarks of Microsoft Corp. Apple and Mac OS are registered trademarks of Apple Inc. Other products may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective manufacturers. 		

Safety Instructions and Approval

Safety Instructions	 Read the installation guide thoroughly before you set up the router. The router is a complicated electronic unit that may be repaired only be authorized and qualified personnel. Do not try to open or repair the router yourself. Do not place the router in a damp or humid place, e.g. a bathroom. The router should be used in a sheltered area, within a temperature range of +5 to +40 Celsius. Do not expose the router to direct sunlight or other heat sources. The housing and electronic components may be damaged by direct sunlight or heat sources. Do not deploy the cable for LAN connection outdoor to prevent electronic shock hazards. Keep the package out of reach of children. When you want to dispose of the router, please follow local regulations on conservation of the environment.
Warranty	We warrant to the original end user (purchaser) that the router will be free from any defects in workmanship or materials for a period of two (2) years from the date of purchase from the dealer. Please keep your purchase receipt in a safe place as it serves as proof of date of purchase. During the warranty period, and upon proof of purchase, should the product have indications of failure due to faulty workmanship and/or materials, we will, at our discretion, repair or replace the defective products or components, without charge for either parts or labor, to whatever extent we deem necessary tore-store the product to proper operating condition. Any replacement will consist of a new or re-manufactured functionally equivalent product of equal value, and will be offered solely at our discretion. This warranty will not apply if the product is modified, misused, tampered with, damaged by an act of God, or subjected to abnormal working conditions. The warranty does not cover the bundled or licensed software of other vendors. Defects which do not significantly affect the usability of the product will not be covered by the warranty. We reserve the right to revise the manual and online documentation and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof without obligation to notify any person of such revision or changes.
Be a Registered Owner	Web registration is preferred. You can register your Vigor router via http://www.draytek.com.
Firmware & Tools Updates	Due to the continuous evolution of DrayTek technology, all routers will be regularly upgraded. Please consult the DrayTek web site for more information on newest firmware, tools and documents.
	http://www.draytek.com

European Community Declarations

Manufacturer:DrayTek Corp.Address:No. 26, Fu Shing Road, HuKou Township, HsinChu Industrial Park, Hsin-Chu County, Taiwan303Product:VigorIPPBX 3510

DrayTek Corp. declares that VigorIPPBX 3510 of routers are in compliance with the following essential requirements and other relevant provisions of R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EEC.

The product conforms to the requirements of Electro-Magnetic Compatibility (EMC) Directive 2004/108/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN55022/Class A and EN55024/Class A.

The product conforms to the requirements of Low Voltage (LVD) Directive 2006/95/EC by complying with the requirements set forth in EN60950-1.

Regulatory Information

Federal Communication Commission Interference Statement

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) This device may accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Please visit http://www.draytek.com/user/AboutRegulatory.php.



This product is designed for the ISDN and POTS network throughout the EC region and Switzerland. Please see the user manual for the applicable networks on your product.



Table of Contents

Chapter 1: Preface	1
1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation	1
1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors	2
1.2.1 For VigorIPPBX 3510 1.2.2 For VigorIPPBX 3500	
1.3 Hardware Installation	
1.4 Printer Installation	7
Chapter 2: Configuring Basic Settings	13
2.1 Changing Password	13
2.2 Quick Start Wizard	15
2.2.1 PPPoE 2.2.2 PPTP/L2TP 2.2.3 Static IP 2.2.4 DHCP	18 20
2.3 Online Status	22
2.4 Saving Configuration	25
Chapter 3: Applications	27
3.1 Versatile PSTN and VoIP Trunk	27
3.2 Cost-effective Extendability by Integrated Analog-telephone Adapter (for 24 Conventional Aanalog Phones) & POE-switch for IP-based phones	29
Chapter 4: Other Applications	31
4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter	31
4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter	38
4.3 QoS Setting Example	42
4.4 LAN – Created by Using NAT	46
4.5 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router	
4.6 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server	50
4.7 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server	
Chapter 5: Reference - Advanced Web Configuration	57
5.1 WAN	57
 5.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network	58 58 61
5.2 LAN	70

5.2.1 Basics of LAN	
5.2.2 General Setup 5.2.3 Static Route	
5.2.4 VLAN	
5.2.5 Bind IP to MAC	
5.3 NAT	80
5.3.1 Port Redirection	80
5.3.2 DMZ Host	
5.3.3 Open Ports	85
5.4 Firewall	88
5.4.1 Basics for Firewall	88
5.4.2 General Setup	
5.4.3 Filter Setup	
5.4.4 DoS Defense	
5.5 Objects Settings	
5.5.1 IP Object	
5.5.2 IP Group	
5.5.3 Service Type Object 5.5.4 Service Type Group	
5.5.5 Keyword Object	
5.5.6 Keyword Group	
5.5.7 File Extension Object	
5.5.8 IM Object	
5.5.9 P2P Object 5.5.10 Misc Object	
5.6 CSM	
5.6.1 IM/P2P Filter Profile	
5.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile 5.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile	
5.7 Bandwidth Management	
5.7.1 Sessions Limit	
5.7.2 Bandwidth Limit	
5.8 Applications	
••	
5.8.1 Dynamic DNS 5.8.2 Schedule	
5.8.3 RADIUS	
5.8.4 UPnP	
5.8.5 IGMP	
5.8.6 Wake on LAN	. 141
5.9 VPN and Remote Access	. 142
5.9.1 Remote Access Control	142
5.9.2 PPP General Setup	
5.9.3 IPSec General Setup	
5.9.4 IPSec Peer Identity 5.9.5 Remote Dial-in User	
5.9.6 LAN to LAN	
5.9.7 Connection Management	
5.10 Certificate Management	
5.10.1 Local Certificate	
5.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate	
5.10.3 Certificate Backup	



5.11 IP PBX	160
5.11.1 Extension 5.11.2 Line Setting 5.11.3 Dial Plan 5.11.4 PBX System 5.11.5 PBX Status	164 167 170
5.12 System Maintenance	186
 5.12.1 System Status. 5.12.2 TR-069. 5.12.3 Administrator Password. 5.12.4 Configuration Backup. 5.12.5 Syslog/Mail Alert. 5.12.6 Time and Date. 5.12.7 Management. 5.12.8 Reboot System. 5.12.9 Firmware Upgrade. 	188 189 189 191 193 194 195
5.13 Diagnostics	197
 5.13.1 Dial-out Trigger 5.13.2 Routing Table 5.13.3 ARP Cache Table 5.13.4 DHCP Table 5.13.5 NAT Sessions Table 5.13.6 Ping Diagnosis 5.13.7 Data Flow Monitor 5.13.8 Traffic Graph 5.13.9 Trace Route 	198 198 199 199 200 201 202
0.10.0 11000 10010	. 200

Chapter 6: Trouble Shooting	205
6.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not	205
6.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not	206
6.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer	208
6.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not	209
6.5 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary	211
6.6 Contacting Your Dealer	211

Appendix: Hardware Specifications213

Chapter 1: Preface

VigorIPPBX 3510 is an ADSL and broadband router with WAN interface. It provides policy-based load-balance, fail-over and BOD (Bandwidth on Demand), also it integrates IP layer QoS, NAT session/bandwidth management to help users control works well with large bandwidth.

By adopting hardware-based VPN platform and hardware encryption of AES/DES/3DS, the router increases the performance of VPN greatly, and offers several protocols (such as IPSec/PPTP/L2TP) with up to 2 VPN tunnels.

The object-based design used in SPI (Stateful Packet Inspection) firewall allows users to set firewall policy with ease. CSM (Content Security Management) provides users control and management in IM (Instant Messenger) and P2P (Peer to Peer) more efficiency than before. By the way, DoS/DDoS prevention and URL/Web content filter strengthen the security outside and control inside.

VigorIPPBX 3510 can provide up to 50 extensions setup to let all registered IP phones in LAN or remote sites around the world to have unlimited free calls through Internet. Moreover, VigorIPPBX 3510 is able to establish multiple networking architectures corresponding to your current desire and future needs of growing communication. Its ISDN/PSTN compatibility lets you move from simple VoIP solution such as IP phone and Softphone to integrate with comprehensive networking infrastructure, such as ISDN and Analog phone line any time you need.

Object-based firewall is flexible and allows your network be safe. In addition, through VoIP function, the communication fee for you and remote people can be reduced.

1.1 Web Configuration Buttons Explanation

Several main buttons appeared on the web pages are defined as the following:

ОК	Save and apply current settings.
Cancel	Cancel current settings and recover to the previous saved settings.
Clear	Clear all the selections and parameters settings, including selection from drop-down list. All the values must be reset with factory default settings.
Add	Add new settings for specified item.
Edit	Edit the settings for the selected item.
Delete	Delete the selected item with the corresponding settings.

Note: For the other buttons shown on the web pages, please refer to Chapter 4 for detailed explanation.



1.2 LED Indicators and Connectors

Before you use the Vigor router, please get acquainted with the LED indicators and connectors first. The displays of LED indicators and connectors for the routers are different slightly. The following sections will introduce them respectively.

1.2.1 For VigorIPPBX 3510



Description for LED



LED	Status	Explanation
PWR (Power)	On	The router is powered on.
	Off	The router is powered off.
ACT (Activity)	Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
	Off	The router is not ready or failed.
WAN	On	The WAN connection is ready.
	Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
CDR	On	CDR utility has been installed and is recording.
	Off	CDR utility has not been installed or is unable to record.
USB	On	A USB device is connected and active.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
MSF	Blinking	Storage (NAND flash or USB disk) is full.
VPN	On	The VPN tunnel is active.
CSM	On	The profiles of CSM (Content Security Management) for IM/P2P, URL Content Filter, Web Content Filter application is enabled from Firewall >> General Setup . (These profiles can be established under CSM menu).
QoS	On	The QoS function is active.
LED on Connector		
Left LED	On	The port is connected.
LAN 1/2/3/4 (Green)	Off	The port is disconnected.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
Right LED	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
(Green)	Off	The port is connected with 10Mbps.
Left LED	On	The port is connected.
WAN 2 (Green)	Off	The port is disconnected.
	Blinking	The data is transmitting.
Right LED	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
(Green)	Off	The port is connected with 10Mbps.

Description for Connectors



Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
FXS	Connecter for telephone set.
FXO	Connecter for FXS interface of PABX.
LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
WAN	Connecter for remote networked devices.
USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer).
PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

1.2.2 For VigorIPPBX 3500



Description for LED



LED		Status	Explanation
PWR (Power)		On	The router is powered on.
		Off	The router is powered off.
ACT (Activity)		Blinking	The router is powered on and running normally.
		Off	The router is powered off.
WAN		On	The WAN connection is ready.
		Blinking	It will blink while transmitting data.
CDR		On	CDR utility has been installed and is recording.
		Off	CDR utility has not been installed or is unable to record.
USB		On	A USB device is connected and active.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
MSF		Blinking	Storage (NAND flash or USB disk) is full.
LED on Conn	ector		
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
LAN 1/2/3/4	(Green)	Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
	(Green)	Off	The port is connected with 10Mbps.
	Left LED	On	The port is connected.
WAN	(Green)	Off	The port is disconnected.
		Blinking	The data is transmitting.
	Right LED	On	The port is connected with 100Mbps.
	(Green)	Off	The port is connected with 10Mbps.

Description for Connectors



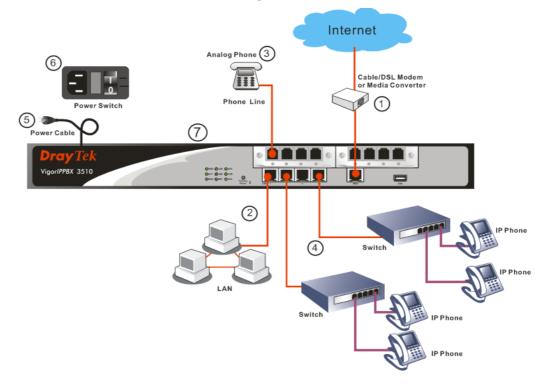
Interface	Description
Factory Reset	Restore the default settings. Usage: Turn on the router (ACT LED is blinking). Press the hole and keep for more than 5 seconds. When you see the ACT LED begins to blink rapidly than usual, release the button. Then the router will restart with the factory default configuration.
FXS	Connecter for telephone set.
FXO	Connecter for FXS interface of PABX.
LAN (1-4)	Connecters for local networked devices.
WAN	Connecter for remote networked devices.
USB	Connecter for a USB device (for 3G USB Modem or printer).
PWR	Connecter for a power adapter.
ON/OFF	Power Switch.

1.3 Hardware Installation

Before starting to configure the router, you have to connect your devices correctly.

- 1. Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to WAN port of router with Connect the cable Modem/DSL Modem/Media Converter to WAN port of router with Ethernet cable (RJ-45).
- 2. Connect one end of an Ethernet cable (RJ-45) to one of the LAN ports of the router and the other end of the cable (RJ-45) into the Ethernet port on your computer.
- 3. Connect the telephone sets with phone lines (for using PBX function). For the model without phone ports, skip this step.
- 4. Connect IP Phone(s) via VigorSwitch to this router.
- 5. Connect one end of the power adapter to the router's power port on the rear panel, and the other side into a wall outlet.
- 6. Power on the device by pressing down the power switch on the rear panel.
- 7. The system starts to initiate. After completing the system test, the **PWR** and **ACT** LEDs will light up and start blinking.

(For the detailed information of LED status, please refer to section 1.2.)

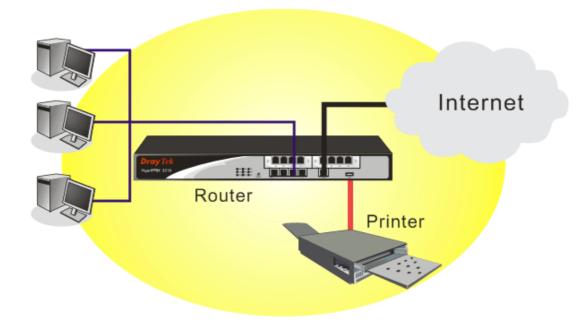


Caution: Each of the Phone ports can be connected to an analog phone only. Do not connect the phone ports to the telephone wall jack. Such connection might damage your router.



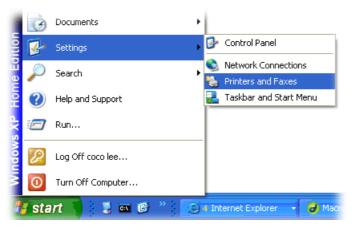
1.4 Printer Installation

You can install a printer onto the router for sharing printing. All the PCs connected this router can print documents via the router. The example provided here is made based on Windows XP/2000. For Windows 98/SE, please visit <u>www.draytek.com</u>.

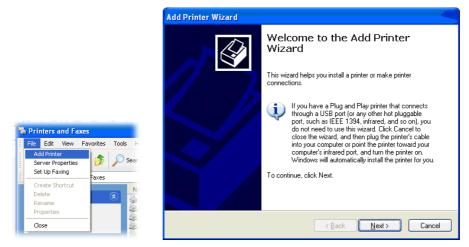


Before using it, please follow the steps below to configure settings for connected computers (or wireless clients).

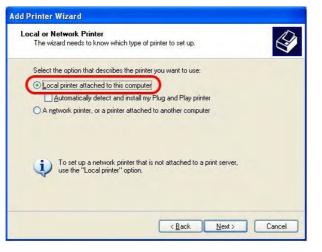
- 1. Connect the printer with the router through USB/parallel port.
- 2. Open Start->Settings-> Printer and Faxes.



3. Open File->Add a New Computer. A welcome dialog will appear. Please click Next.



4. Click Local printer attached to this computer and click Next.



5. In this dialog, choose **Create a new port Type of port** and use the drop down list to select **Standard TCP/IP Port**. Click **Next**.

lect a Printer Port Computers communicate w	ith printers through ports.	
Select the port you want yo new port.	our printer to use. If the port is not listed, you	can create a
OUse the following port:	LPT1: (Recommended Printer Port)	1
60	eg (
⊙ <u>C</u> reate a new port: Type of port:	Standard TCP/IP Port	

6. In the following dialog, type **192.168.1.1** (router's LAN IP) in the field of **Printer Name or IP Address** and type **IP_192.168.1.1** as the port name. Then, click **Next**.

dd Port For which device do you wan	t to add a port?
Enter the Printer Name or IP a	ddress, and a port name for the desired device.
Printer Name or IP Address:	192.168.1.1
Port Name:	IP_192.168.1.1

7. Click Standard and choose Generic Network Card.

	t Information Require could not be identified.	ed	
1. The device is p	vice is of unknown type. properly configured, on the previous page is (
		nother search on the network by return	
previous wizard p	age of select the device	e type if you are sure the address is co	rrect.
	age of select the device	e type ir you are sure the address is co	rrect.
Device Type	Generic Network Card		rrect.
Device Type			
Device Type	Generic Network Carc		rect.

8. Then, in the following dialog, click **Finish**.



9. Now, your system will ask you to choose right name of the printer that you installed onto the router. Such step can make correct driver loaded onto your PC. When you finish the selection, click **Next**.

Install Printer Softwa The manufacturer a	and model determine which printer software to	use.
	acturer and model of your printer. If your printe Disk. If your printer is not listed, consult your p r software.	
Manufacturer	Printers	1
AST AT&T Brother	Brother HL-1060 BR-Script2 Brother HL-1070 BR-Script2	
Canon	signed.	odate
This driver is digitally :	ning is important	

10. For the final stage, you need to go back to **Control Panel-> Printers** and edit the property of the new printer you have added.

ieneral Sha	ring Ports Advanc	ced Device Settings	
B r	other HL-1070		
Distante de la C		and the state of the Constant	-
checked por		ents will print to the first free	
Port	Description	Printer	~
3.250	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt Epson Stylus COLOR 1160	
D IP_1	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt	
□ IP_1	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt HP LaserJet 1300	
□ IP_1	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt	
□ IP_1	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt	
✓ IP_1	Standard TCP/IP Po	rt Brother HL-1070	
D PDF	Local Port	PDF995	4
Add P	ort Dele	ete Port Configure Por	t
- Hadre			
Enable bio	directional support		
Enable pri	nter pooling		

11. Select "LPR" on Protocol, type **p1** (number 1) as Queue Name. Then click **OK**. Next please refer to the red rectangle for choosing the correct protocol and UPR name.

onfigure Standard TCP/I	P Port Monitor	? 🛛
Port Settings		
Port Name:	IP_192.168.1.1	
Printer Name or IP Address:	192.168.1.1	1
Protocol O <u>R</u> aw		D
Raw Settings Port Number 91	00	
LPR Settings Queue Name: p1	1	
LPR Byte Counting Enal	bled	
SNMP Status Enabled		
Community Name: po	ablic	
SNMP Device Index:		
	OK.	Cancel

The printer can be used for printing now. Most of the printers with different manufacturers are compatible with vigor router.



Note 1: Some printers with the fax/scanning or other additional functions are not supported. If you do not know whether your printer is supported or not, please visit www.draytek.com to find out the printer list. Open **Support >FAQ**; find out the link of **Printer Server** and click it; then click the **What types of printers are compatible with Vigor router**? link.

FAQ - Basic					FAQ	
01. What are the differences among these	e firmware file formats	?			Basic	
02. How could I get the telnet command fo	or routers ?				Advanced	
03. How can I backup/restore my configur	ation settings ?				VPN	
04. How do I reset/clear the router's pass	word ?				DHCP	
05. How to bring back my router to its det	fault value ?				Wireless	
06. How do I tell the type of my Vigor Rou	uter is AnnexA or Ann	exB? (For A	DSL model o	unly)	VoIP	
07. Ways for firmware upgrade.					QoS	
08. Why is SNMP removed in firmware 2.3	3.6 and above for ∨igo	r2200 Series	routers?		ISDN	
09. I failed to upgrade Vigor Router's firm I do?	ware from my Mac ma	chine consta	ntly, what sl	nould	Firewall / IP Filter Printer Server	
1 001						
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server		ws2000/>	(P ?		USB ISDN TA	
	nting on Windo					
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server 01. How do I configure LPR pri	nting on Windo nting on Windo	ws98/Me				
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server 01. How do I configure LPR pri 02. How do I configure LPR pri	nting on Windo nting on Windo nting on Linux I	ws98/Me boxes ?	?	· docume	IIRR	/igor210
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server D1. How do I configure LPR pri D2. How do I configure LPR pri D3. How do I configure LPR pri D4. Why there are some strang	nting on Windo nting on Windo nting on Linux I ge print-out whe	ws98/Me poxes ? n I try to	? print my	· docume	IIRR	/igor210
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server 01. How do I configure LPR pri 02. How do I configure LPR pri 03. How do I configure LPR pri 04. Why there are some strang 04 P / 2300's print server?	nting on Windo nting on Windo nting on Linux I ge print-out whe compatible with	ws98/Me boxes ? n I try to n Vigor ro	? print my puter?		IIRR	/igor210
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server 01. How do I configure LPR pri 02. How do I configure LPR pri 03. How do I configure LPR pri 04. Why there are some strang 19 / 2300's print server? 05. What types of printers are	nting on Windor nting on Windor nting on Linux I ge print-out whe compatible with the USB Printe	ws98/Me boxes ? n I try to Vigor ro er Port of	? print my puter?		IIRR	/igor210
10. How to upgrade firmware of Vigor Rou AQ - Printer Server D1. How do I configure LPR pri D2. How do I configure LPR pri D3. How do I configure LPR pri D4. Why there are some strang IP / 2300's print server? D5. What types of printers are D6. What are the limitations in	nting on Windo nting on Windo nting on Linux I ge print-out whe compatible with the USB Printe size of Vigor R	ws98/Me boxes ? n I try to Vigor ro er Port of outer ?	? print my puter?		IIRR	/igor210

This page is left blank.

Chapter 2: Configuring Basic Settings

For use the router properly, it is necessary for you to change the password of web configuration for security and adjust primary basic settings.

This chapter explains how to setup a password for an administrator and how to adjust basic settings for accessing Internet successfully. Be aware that only the administrator can change the router configuration.

2.1 Changing Password

To change the password for this device, you have to access into the web browse with default password first.

1. Make sure your computer connects to the router correctly.



Notice: You may either simply set up your computer to get IP dynamically from the router or set up the IP address of the computer to be the same subnet as **the default IP address of Vigor router 192.168.1.1**. For the detailed information, please refer to the later section - Trouble Shooting of this guide.

2. Open a web browser on your PC and type http://192.168.1.1. A pop-up window will open to ask for username and password. Please type "admin" as the username and leave blank for the password on the window. Next click **OK** for next screen.



3. Now, the **Main Screen** will pop up.

uick Start Wizard	System Statu	s			
Aline Status	Model Name Firmware Versie Build Date/Time	on : 3.5.(or3510 PBX)_RC4 5 2009 17:22:30		
AT irewall		LAN			WAN 1
bjects Setting SM andwidth Management pplications PN and Remote Access	MAC Addres 1st IP Addre 1st Subnet DHCP Serve DNS	ess : 192 Mask : 255 r : Ye	50-7F-00-00-00 .168.1.1 .255.255.0 s .95.1.1	Link Status MAC Address Connection IP Address Default Gateway	: Connected : 00-50-7F-00-00-01 : DHCP Client : 192.168.5.27 : 192.168.5.1
ertificate Management P PBX		SIP Trur	ık		WAN 2
ystem Maintenance iagnostics All Rights Reserved.	Index 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6.	Profile 	Status 	Link Status MAC Address Connection IP Address Default Gateway	: Disconnected : 00-50-7F-00-00-02 : :

Note: The home page will change slightly in accordance with the router you have.

4. Go to System Maintenance page and choose Administrator Password.

System Maintenance >>	> Administrator	Password	Setup
-----------------------	-----------------	----------	-------

Old P	assword		
New	Password		
Confi	rm Password		

- 5. Enter the login password (the default is blank) on the field of **Old Password**. Type **New Password** and **Confirm Password**. Then click **OK** to continue.
- 6. Now, the password has been changed. Next time, use the new password to access the Web Configurator for this router.

Connect to 192.1	68.1.1 🛛 🖓 🔀
	GA
Login to the Router V	Veb Configurator
User name:	🛃 admin 🔛
Password:	••••
	Remember my password
	OK Cancel

2.2 Quick Start Wizard

If your router can be under an environment with high speed NAT, the configuration provide here can help you to deploy and use the router quickly. The first screen of **Quick Start Wizard** is entering login password. After typing the password, please click **Next**.

Quick Start Wizard	
Enter login password	
Please enter an alpha-numeric	c string as your Password (Max 23 characters).
New Password	••••
Confirm Password	
	<pre>< Back Next > Finish Cancel</pre>

On the next page as shown below, please select the WAN interface that you use. Choose **Auto negotiation** as the physical type for your router. Then click **Next** for next step.

Interface	
WAN Interface:	WAN1 💌
Display Name:	
Physical Mode:	Ethernet 😪
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation 💌

WAN Interface	Specify which interface you use for network connection.
Display Name	Type the name for this router.
Physical Mode	If you choose WAN2, you can specify Ethernet or 3G USB Modem as the physical mode.
Physical Type	Choose the physical type you desired. The default setting is Auto negotiation.



Auto negotiation 💌
Auto negotiation
10M half duplex
10M full duplex
100M half duplex
100M full duplex

On the next page as shown below, please select the appropriate Internet access type according to the information from your ISP. For example, you should select PPPoE mode if the ISP provides you PPPoE interface. Then click **Next** for next step.

Quick Start Wizard

WAN 1					
Select one of the	following Internet A	ccess types pro	ovided by your I	SP.	
	PPPoE				
	🔘 РРТР				
	O L2TP				
	O Static I	[P			
	O DHCP				
	0 51101				

In the **Quick Start Wizard**, you can configure the router to access the Internet with different protocol/modes such as **PPPoE**, **PPTP**, **L2TP**, **Static IP** or **DHCP**. The router supports the DSL WAN interface for Internet access.

2.2.1 PPPoE

PPPoE stands for **Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet**. It relies on two widely accepted standards: PPP and Ethernet. It connects users through an Ethernet to the Internet with a common broadband medium, such as a single DSL line, wireless device or cable modem. All the users over the Ethernet can share a common connection.

PPPoE is used for most of DSL modem users. All local users can share one PPPoE connection for accessing the Internet. Your service provider will provide you information about user name, password, and authentication mode.



If your ISP provides you the **PPPoE** connection, please select **PPPoE** for this router. The following page will be shown:

Quick Start Wizard

WAN 1	
Enter the user name and pa	ssword provided by your ISP.
User Name	84005755@hinet.net
Password	•••••
Confirm Password	

User Name	Assign a specific valid user name provided by the ISP.
Password	Assign a valid password provided by the ISP.
Confirm Password	Retype the password.

Click Next for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

Please confirm your settings:	
WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	PPPoE
Click Back to modify char settings and restart the Vi	nges if necessary. Otherwise, click Finish to save the current igor router.
	< Back Next > Finish Cancel

Click **Finish.** A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

2.2.2 PPTP/L2TP

Click **PPTP/L2TP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

PPTP Setting ---

Qui	ick	Sta	nt \	Ni	izar	d

WAN 1 Enter the user name, pass your ISP.	word, WAN IP configuration a	and PPTP server IP provided by
User Name		
Password		
Confirm Password		
WAN IP Configuration		
Obtain an IP address	automatically	
Specify an IP address	3	
IP Address	172.16.3.229	
Subnet Mask	172.16.3.4	
Gateway	undefined	
Primary DNS	undefined	
Second DNS	undefined	
PPTP Server		
		1

L2TP Setting ----

0.1110	CK SI	ап v	Vizard
Quit			41 <u>2</u> 41 4

WAN 1 Enter the user name, passw your ISP.	ord, WAN IP configuration and L2TP server IP provided by	
User Name		
Password		
Confirm Password		
WAN IP Configuration		
Obtain an IP address a	utomatically	
Specify an IP address		
IP Address		
Subnet Mask		
Gateway	undefined	
Primary DNS	undefined	
Second DNS	undefined	
L2TP Server		
	< Back Next > Finish	Cancel

- **Password** Assign a valid password provided by the ISP.
- **Confirm Password** Retype the password.

Obtain an IP address automatically	Click it to obtain the IP address automatically.
Specify an IP address	 Click it to specify some data manually. IP Address – Type the IP address. Subnet Mask – Type the subnet mask Gateway – Type the gateway of the router. Primary DNS – Type the primary DNS address Secondary DNS – Type the secondary DNS if required. PPTP/L2TP Server – Type the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP Server.

Click Next for viewing summary of such connection.

Quick Start Wizard

ase confirm your settings:	
WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	РРТР
settings and restart the V	igor router.
	< Back Next > Finish Canc

Click **Finish.** A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

2.2.3 Static IP

Click **Static IP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

Quick Start Wizard		
Static IP Client Mode		
WAN 1		
Enter the Static I	P configuration probided by your ISP.	
WAN IP	172.16.3.229	
Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0	
Gateway	172.16.3.229	
Primary DNS		
Secondary DNS	(optional)	
	< Back Next > Finish Cancel	
WANIP Address	Type the IP address.	
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask.	
Gateway	Type the gateway IP address.	
Primary/Secondary DNS	Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use Static IP mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.	

After finishing the settings in this page, click **Next** to see the following page.

Quick Start Wizard

e confirm your settings:	
WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	Static IP

Click **Finish.** A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

2.2.4 DHCP

Click **DHCP** as the protocol. Type in all the information that your ISP provides for this protocol.

Quick Start Wizard

Quick Start Wizard

WAN 1 If your ISP requenter it in.	uires you to enter a specific host name or specific MAC address, please
Host Name	(astional)
MAC	00 - 50 - 7F - 00 - 01 (optional)

Host Name Type the name of the host.

MAC Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a** MAC Address and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.

After finishing the settings in this page, click Next to see the following page.

WAN Interface:	WAN1
Physical Mode:	Ethernet
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation
Internet Access:	DHCP
Click Back to modify char settings and restart the Vi	nges if necessary. Otherwise, click Finish to save the current igor router.



Click **Finish.** A page of **Quick Start Wizard Setup OK!!!** will appear. Then, the system status of this protocol will be shown.

Quick Start Wizard Setup OK !!!

2.3 Online Status

The online status shows the system status, WAN status, ADSL Information and other status related to this router within one page. If you select **PPPoE** as the protocol, you will find out a link of **Dial PPPoE** or **Drop PPPoE** in the Online Status web page.

Online status for PPPoE

Online Status

System Status				Sys	stem Uptime: 3:18:44
Primary		Sec	ondary		
LAN Status		Primary DNS: 19	2.168.66.1	Secondar	y DNS: 168.95.1.1
IP Address	ТХ Р	ackets RX	Packets		
192.168.1.1	749	552			
WAN 1 Status					>> <u>Release</u>
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	9
Yes	ADSL		DHCP Client	0:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Pack	ets TX Rate(Bps	5) RX Pack	ets RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.66.10	192,168.6	6.1 1	9	1	0
WAN 2 Status					>> <u>Drop PPPoE</u>
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time)
Yes	Ethernet		PPPoE	0:00:22	
IP	GW IP	TX Pack	ets TX Rate(Bps	5) RX Pack	ets RX Rate(Bps)
218,160,234,238	61.216.11	6.254 14	16	15	41
ADSL Information	(ADSL	. Firmware Version:	211011_A)		
ATM Statistics 1	X Blocks	RX Blocks	Correct	ed Blocks	Uncorrected Blocks
1	18	23	0		0
ADSL Status Mod	le Stat	e Up Spee	d Down Spe	ed SNR Ma	rgin Loop Att.
G.DI	ит ѕно	WTIME 1024000	11936000	0	0

Online status for PPTP

Online Status

System Status				System	Uptime: 3:18:44
Primary		Seconda	ary		
LAN Status	P	rimary DNS: 168.95	.1.1	Secondary DN	S: 168.95.1.1
IP Address	TX Pac	kets RX Pac	kets		
192.168.1.1	480	339			
WAN 1 Status					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	ADSL		Static IP	0:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.66.52	192,168,66.3	L 1	9	1	16
WAN 2 Status					>> <u>Release</u>
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		PPTP	0:00:28	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.129.11	192,168,129	.1 8	12	10	9
ADSL Information	(ADSL Fi	rmware Version: 211	011_A)		
ATM Statistics	TX Blocks	RX Blocks	Corrected	l Blocks - Unco	rrected Blocks
	4	3	0	2	
ADSL Status Mo	de State	Up Speed	Down Speed	SNR Margin	Loop Att.
G.D	MT SHOWT	TIME 1024000	12000000	8	0

Online status for Static IP

Online Status

System Status				System	Uptime: 3:18:44
Primary		Seconda	ary		
LAN Status	Pri	Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1 Se		Secondary DNS: 168.95.1	
IP Address	TX Pack	ets RX Pac	kets		
192.168.1.1	480	339			
WAN 1 Status					
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	ADSL		Static IP	0:00:00	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.66.52	192,168,66,1	1	9	1	16
WAN 2 Status					>> <u>Release</u>
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		PPTP	0:00:28	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.129.11	192,168,129,1	8	12	10	9
ADSL Information	(ADSL Firr	nware Version: 211	.011_A)		
ATM Statistics T	X Blocks	RX Blocks	Corrected	Blocks Unco	orrected Blocks
4		3	0	2	
ADSL Status Mod	le State	Up Speed	Down Speed	SNR Margin	Loop Att.
G.DM	IT SHOWTI	ME 1024000	12000000	8	0

Online status for DHCP

Online Status

System Status			System Uptir		Uptime: 3:20:37
Prima	ry	Secondary			
LAN Status	Primar	Primary DNS: 168.95.1.1		Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1	
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Pac	kets		
192.168.1.1	17658	30301			
WAN 1 Status					>> <u>Release</u>
Enable	Line	Name	Mode	Up Time	
Yes	Ethernet		DHCP Client	3:20:19	
IP	GW IP	TX Packets	TX Rate(Bps)	RX Packets	RX Rate(Bps)
192.168.5.20	192.168.5.1	8918	3	15267	671

Detailed explanation is shown below:

Primary DNS	Displays the IP address of the primary DNS.
Secondary DNS	Displays the IP address of the secondary DNS.
LAN Status	
IP Address	Displays the IP address of the LAN interface.
TX Packets	Displays the total transmitted packets at the LAN interface.
RX Packets	Displays the total number of received packets at the LAN interface.
WAN Status	
Line	Displays the physical connection (Ethernet) of this interface.
Name	Displays the name set in WAN1/WAN web page.
Mode	Displays the type of WAN connection (e.g., PPPoE).
Up Time	Displays the total uptime of the interface.
IP	Displays the IP address of the WAN interface.
GW IP	Displays the IP address of the default gateway.
TX Packets	Displays the total transmitted packets at the WAN interface.
TX Rate	Displays the speed of transmitted octets at the WAN interface.
RX Packets	Displays the total number of received packets at the WAN interface.
RX Rate	Displays the speed of received octets at the WAN interface.

Note: The words in green mean that the WAN connection of that interface is ready for accessing Internet; the words in red mean that the WAN connection of that interface is not ready for accessing Internet.



2.4 Saving Configuration

Each time you click **OK** on the web page for saving the configuration, you can find messages showing the system interaction with you.

Status: Ready

Ready indicates the system is ready for you to input settings.

Settings Saved means your settings are saved once you click Finish or OK button.

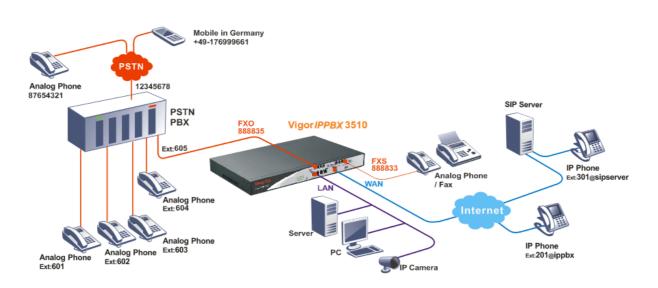
This page is left blank.



Chapter 3: Applications

This chapter shows several scenarios for your reference to configure IP PBX for different purposes.

3.1 Versatile PSTN and VoIP Trunk



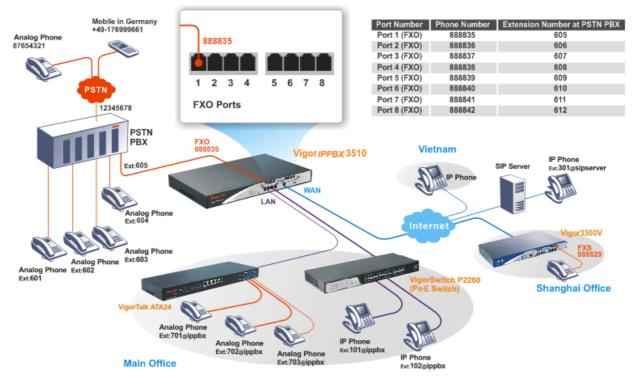
- The establishment of IP registration is made through WAN port.
- The remote IP -based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- The remote IP -based phone with ext. 201 is registered at remote site.
- The analog phone or fax machine is connected to FXS module. The said VoIP No. is 888833.
- The PSTN PBX is with PSTN line No. 12345678. The remote analog phone line is No. 87654321. The remote mobile phone is with No. +49-176999661.
- The analog phones with ext. No.601, 602, 603, 604 are connected to PSTN PBX. Connect one FXO port to PSTN PBX's inside line. The extension No. 605 line is assigned to the FXO port on FXO module.
- The analog phone (connected to FXS module) made a call to remote mobile (+49-176999661): Press 888835#. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, press outside line 0 and then press the mobile number +49-176999661.
- The IP phone with ext. No. 201 made a call to remote analog phone (No. 87654321): Press 888835#. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, press outside line 0 and then press the PSTN number 87654321.
- The mobile No. . +49-176999661 made a call to IP Phone with ext. No.201 : Press 12345678. After getting through you will hear the auto reply from the PBX, then



press the extension No. 605. After getting through you can hear the dial tone, then press ext. No. 201.

• The analog phone with ext. No. 602 made a call to IP phone with extension No. 301: Press extension No. 605. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, then press the ext. No. 301.

3.2 Cost-effective Extendability by Integrated Analog-telephone Adapter (for 24 Conventional Aanalog Phones) & POE-switch for IP-based phones



- The establishment of IP registration is made through WAN port.
- The remote IP -based phone with ext. 301 is registered at a SIP server.
- The remote IP -based phone with ext. 201 is registered at remote site.
- The PSTN PBX is with PSTN line No. 12345678. The remote analog phone line is No. 87654321. The remote mobile phone is with No. +49-176999661.
- The analog phones with ext. No.601, 602, 603, 604 are connected to PSTN PBX. Connect 8 FXO ports to PSTN PBX's inside line.

FXO 1 port: with extension No. 605 [Phone No. 88835]

- FXO 2 port: with extension No. 606 [Phone No. 88836]
- FXO 3 port: with extension No. 607 [Phone No. 88837]
- FXO 4 port: with extension No. 608 [Phone No. 88838]
- FXO 5 port: with extension No. 609 [Phone No. 88839]FXO 6 port: with extension No. 610 [Phone No. 88840]
- FXO 7 port: with extension No. 611 [Phone No. 88841]
- FXO 8 port: with extension No. 612 [Phone No. 88842]



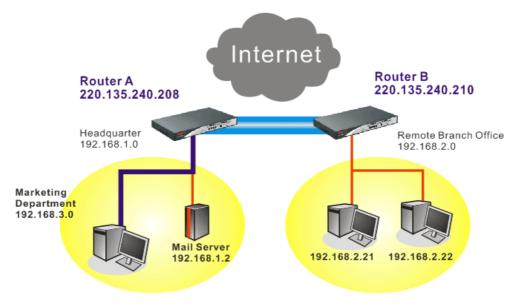
- The IP phone with ext. No. 201 made a call to remote analog phone (No. 87654321): Press 888835#. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, press outside line **0** and then press the PSTN number 87654321.
- The analog phone with VoIP number 88829 in Shanghai made a call to the remote mobile No. (+49-176999661): Press 888842#. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, press outside line **0** and then press the mobile No. +49-176999661.
- The mobile No. +49-176999661 made a call to IP Phone with ext. No.201: Press 12345678. After getting through you will hear the auto reply from the PBX, then press the extension No. 611. After getting through you can hear the dial tone, then press ext. No. 201.
- The analog phone with ext. No. 602 made a call to IP phone with extension No. 703: Press extension No. **609.** After getting through you will hear the dial tone, then press the ext. No. 703.
- The analog phone with VoIP number 88829 in Shanghai made a call to the analog phone (ext. No.604): Press 888838#. After getting through you will hear the dial tone, then press the ext. No. 604.

Device	WAN IP	Port Number	Phone Number	Extension Number at PSTN PBX
VigorIPPBX3510	220.135.240.20	Port 1 (FXO)	888835	605
		Port 2 (FXO)	888836	606
		Port 3 (FXO)	888837	607
		Port 4 (FXO)	888838	608
		Port 5 (FXO)	888839	609
		Port 6 (FXO)	888840	610
		Port 7 (FXO)	888841	611
		Port 8 (FXO)	888842	612
Vigor3300V	61.31.167.135	Port 1 (FXS)	888829	

Chapter 4: Other Applications

4.1 Create a LAN-to-LAN Connection Between Remote Office and Headquarter

The most common case is that you may want to connect to network securely, such as the remote branch office and headquarter. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a LAN-to-LAN profile. These two networks (LANs) should NOT have the same network address.



Settings in Router A in headquarter:

- 1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
- 2. Then,

For using **PPP** based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

PPP General Setup		
PPP/MP Protocol	IP Address Assignmen	t for Dial-In Users
Dial-In PPP PAP or CHAP V	(When DHCP Disable s	et)
Authentication	Start IP Address	192.168.1.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption Optional MPPE		
Mutual Authentication (PAP) 🛛 🔿 Yes 💿 No		
Username		
Password		

For using IPSec-based service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to



set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup				
VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users	; and Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN)).		
IKE Authentication Method				
Pre-Shared Key	•••••			
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	••••			
IPSec Security Method				
Medium (AH)				
Data will be authentic, but	will not be encrypted.			
High (ESP) 🔽 DES 🔽	3DES 🔽 AES			
Data will be encrypted and	I authentic.			
	OK Cancel			

- 3. Go to LAN-to-LAN. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
- 4. Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1 1. Common Settings		
Profile Name Branch1	Call Direction Both Dial-Out Dial-In Always on	
Enable this profile	Idle Timeout 300 second(s)	
VPN Connection Through WAN1 First 👻	Enable PING to keep alive	
Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block	PING to the IP	

5. Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

2. Dial-Out Settings		
Type of Server I am calling	Link Type	64k bps 🕑
О РРТР	Username	???
IPSec Tunnel	Password	
O L2TP with IPSec Policy None	PPP Authentication	
Conver ID/Lect Name for VDN	VJ Compression	🖲 On 🔘 Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as 5551234, draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) 220.135.240.210	IKE Authentication Me Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.5) None	09)
	Medium(AH)	out Authentication

If a *PPP-based service* is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

2. Dial-Out Settings			
Type of Server I am calling	Username	draytek	
• PPTP	Password	•••••	
O IPSec Tunnel	PPP Authentication	PAP/CHAP 🗸	
O L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	⊙ On ◯ Off	
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) 220.135.240.210	 Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) 	IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method	
	O High(ESP) DES with Advanced	High(ESP) DES without Authentication Advanced	
	Index(1-15) in <u>Schedul</u>	<u>e</u> Setup:	

6. Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router B dial-in to build VPN connection.

Dray Tek

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.

3. Dial-In Settings

Allowed Dial-In Type		
РРТР	Username	???
✓ IPSec Tunnel	Password	
L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	🖲 On 🔘 Off
Specify Remote VPN Gateway	IKE Authentication Meth	od
Peer VPN Server IP	Pre-Shared Key	
220.135.240.210	IKE Pre-Shared Key	
or Peer ID	Digital Signature(X.509)
	None 😪	
	TDCoc Cocurity Mathed	
	IPSec Security Method	
	Medium(AH)	_
	High(ESP) 🗹 DES 🗹	3DES 🗹 AES

If a *PPP-based service* is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

3. Dial-In Settings

Allowed Dial-In Type		
✓ РРТР	Username	draytek
IPSec Tunnel	Password	•••••
L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	💿 On 🔘 Off
Specify Remote VPN Gateway Peer VPN Server IP	IKE Authentication Meth ✓ Pre-Shared Key	od
220.135.240.210	IKE Pre-Shared Key	
or Peer ID	Digital Signature(X.509)
	IPSec Security Method	
	Medium(AH)	
	High(ESP) 🗹 DES 🗹	3DES 🗹 AES

7. At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router A can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router B via the VPN connection.

4. TCP/IP Network Sett	ings			
My WAN IP	0.0.0.0		RIP Direction	Disable 💌
Remote Gateway IP	0.0.0.0		From first subnet to rem do	ote network, you have to
Remote Network IP	192.168.2.0			Route 💌
Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0			
	More		Change default route single WAN supports this	to this VPN tunnel (Only)
OK Clear Cancel				

Settings in Router B in the remote office:

- 1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
- 2. Then, for using **PPP based** services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

PPP General Setup			
PPP/MP Protocol		IP Address Assignme	
Dial-In PPP PAP or CHAP		(When DHCP Disable	
Authentication		Start IP Address	192.168.2.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE) Optional MPPE	•		
Mutual Authentication (PAP) 💦 🔿 Yes (🖲 No		
Username			
Password			

For using **IPSec-based** service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec 0	Seneral Setup
VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup	
Dial-in Set up for Remote Dial-in users a	nd Dynamic IP Client (LAN to LAN).
IKE Authentication Method	
Pre-Shared Key	•••••
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	•••••
IPSec Security Method	
Medium (AH)	
Data will be authentic, but w	ill not be encrypted.
High (ESP) 🗹 DES 🗹 3D	es 🗹 Aes
Data will be encrypted and a	uthentic.
(OK Cancel

- 3. Go to LAN-to-LAN. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
- 4. Set **Common Settings** as shown below. You should enable both of VPN connections because any one of the parties may start the VPN connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Profile Index : 1 1. Common Settings					
Profile Name Enable this profile	Branch1	Call Direction Both Always on	🔘 Dial-Out 🔘 Dial-In		
		Idle Timeout	300 second(s)		
VPN Connection Through	WAN1 First 🚩	Enable PING to keep	alive		
Netbios Naming Packet	● Pass ○ Block	PING to the IP			

Dray Tek

5. Set **Dial-Out Settings** as shown below to dial to connect to Router B aggressively with the selected Dial-Out method.

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-Out connection.

2. Dial-Out Settings		
Type of Server I am calling	Username	draytek
О РРТР	Password	
IPSec Tunnel	PPP Authentication	PAP/CHAP 🗸
O L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	● On ○ Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN.	IKE Authentication Method	i i
(such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	Pre-Shared Key	
220.135.240.208	IKE Pre-Shared Key	
	O Digital Signature(X.509)	
	None 😽	
	IPSec Security Method	
	Medium(AH)	
	O High(ESP) DES without Au	uthentication 💉
	Advanced	
	Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Se	tup:

If a *PPP-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, PPP Authentication and VJ Compression for this Dial-Out connection.

2. Dial-Out Settings		
Type of Server I am calling	Username	draytek
• РРТР	Password	•••••
O IPSec Tunnel	PPP Authentication	PAP/CHAP 🗸
O L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	⊙ On ○ Off
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89)	IKE Authentication Metho	od
220.135.240.208	Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key	
	O Digital Signature(X.509)
	None 🗸	
	IPSec Security Method	
	Medium(AH)	
	O High(ESP) DES without	Authentication 👻
	Advanced	
	Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> S	Setup:

6. Set **Dial-In settings** to as shown below to allow Router A dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an *IPSec-based* service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in **IPSec General Setup** above.



3. Dial-In Settings

Allowed Dial-In Type		
РРТР	Username	draytek
✓ IPSec Tunnel	Password	•••••
L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	💿 On 🔘 Off
Specify Remote VPN Gateway	IKE Authentication Meth	od
Peer VPN Server IP	Pre-Shared Key	
220.135.240.208	IKE Pre-Shared Key	
or Peer ID	Digital Signature(X.509))
	None 🛩	
	IPSec Security Method	
	Medium(AH)	
	High(ESP) 🗹 DES 🗹	3DES 🗹 AES

If a *PPP-based* service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

3. Dial-In Settings		
Allowed Dial-In Type		
✓ РРТР	Username	draytek
IPSec Tunnel	Password	•••••
L2TP with IPSec Policy Nice to Have	VJ Compression	💿 On 🔘 Off
Specify Remote VPN Gateway Peer VPN Server IP 220.135.240.208 or Peer ID	IKE Authentication Meth Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.50) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH)	
	High(ESP) 🛛 🗹 DES 🗹	3DES 🗹 AES

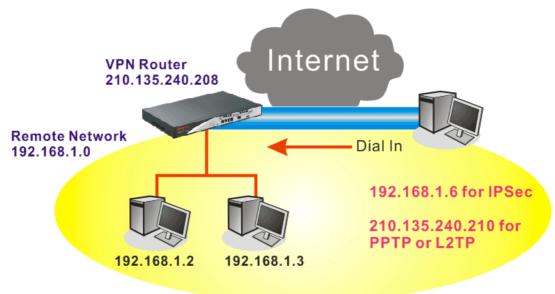
7. At last, set the remote network IP/subnet in **TCP/IP Network Settings** so that Router B can direct the packets destined to the remote network to Router A via the VPN connection.

Remote Gateway IP 0.0.0.0 Remote Network IP 192.168.1.0 Remote Network Mask 255.255.255.0 More Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only single WAN supports this)	My WAN IP	0.0.0.0	RIP Direction	Disable 💌
Remote Network IP 192.168.1.0 Route Remote Network Mask 255.255.0 Image: Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only image)	Remote Gateway IP	0.0.0.0		ote network, you have to
More Change default route to this VPN tunnel (Only	Remote Network IP	192.168.1.0		Route 🛩
INOIC S S S	Remote Network Mask	255.255.255.0		
,		More	-	



4.2 Create a Remote Dial-in User Connection Between the Teleworker and Headquarter

The other common case is that you, as a teleworker, may want to connect to the enterprise network securely. According to the network structure as shown in the below illustration, you may follow the steps to create a Remote User Profile and install Smart VPN Client on the remote host.



Settings in VPN Router in the enterprise office:

- 1. Go to **VPN and Remote Access** and select **Remote Access Control** to enable the necessary VPN service and click **OK**.
- 2. Then, for using PPP based services, such as PPTP, L2TP, you have to set general settings in **PPP General Setup**.

PPP General Setup		
PPP/MP Protocol	IP Address Assignment fo	r Dial-In Users
Dial-In PPP PAP or CHAP V	(When DHCP Disable set)	
Authentication	Start IP Address	192.168.1.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption Optional MPPE		
Mutual Authentication (PAP) 🛛 🔘 Yes 💿 No		
Username		
Password		

For using IPSec-based service, such as IPSec or L2TP with IPSec Policy, you have to set general settings in **IKE/IPSec General Setup**, such as the pre-shared key that both parties have known.



VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

VPN IKE/IPSec General Setup

Dial-in Set up	for Remote Dia	al-in users a	and Dynamic II	P Client (LAN	to LAN).

IKE Authentication Method		
Pre-Shared Key	••••	
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	••••	
IPSec Security Method		
🗹 Medium (AH)		
Data will be authentic, bu	t will not be encrypted.	
High (ESP) 🛛 🗹 DES 🛛] 3DES 🔍 AES	
Data will be encrypted an	d authentic.	
	OK Cancel	

- 3. Go to Remote Dial-In User. Click on one index number to edit a profile.
- 4. Set Dial-In settings to as shown below to allow the remote user dial-in to build VPN connection.

If an IPSec-based service is selected, you may further specify the remote peer IP Address, IKE Authentication Method and IPSec Security Method for this Dial-In connection. Otherwise, it will apply the settings defined in IPSec General Setup above.

User account and Authentication Finable this account Idle Timeout	Username ??? Password
Allowed Dial-In Type	IKE Authentication Method
РРТР	IKE Pre-Shared Key
✓ IPSec Tunnel	Digital Signature(X.509)
L2TP with IPSec Policy None	None V
	IPSec Security Method
	Medium(AH)
	High(ESP) 🗹 DES 🗹 3DES 🗹 AES
	Local ID (optional)

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

If a **PPP-based** service is selected, you should further specify the remote peer IP Address, Username, Password, and VJ Compression for this Dial-In connection.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Index No. 1			
User account and	Authentication	Username	draytek
Enable this accord	ount	Password	
Idle Timeout	300 second(s)		
		IKE Authentication	n Method
Allowed Dial-In Ty	ре	Pre-Shared Key	
🗹 РРТР		IKE Pre-Shared K	ey
IPSec Tunnel			(X E09)
L2TP with IPSe	c Policy None	Digital Signature(X.509)	(((,,,,),,,))
		IPSec Security Me	thod
		Medium(AH)	
		High(ESP) 🗹 DE	es 🗹 3des 🗹 Aes
		Local ID (optional)	
	ОК	Clear Cancel	

Settings in the remote host:

- For Win98/ME, you may use "Dial-up Networking" to create the PPTP tunnel to Vigor router. For Win2000/XP, please use "Network and Dial-up connections" or "Smart VPN Client", complimentary software to help you create PPTP, L2TP, and L2TP over IPSec tunnel. You can find it in CD-ROM in the package or go to www.draytek.com download center. Install as instructed.
- 2. After successful installation, for the first time user, you should click on the **Step 0**. **Configure** button. Reboot the host.

order to configure a L2TP/IPSec c or a L2TP connection. For more in	onnection using fomation, please	
Q240262 in the Microsoft Knowled		
Confi	gure	
Step 1. Dial to ISP If you have already gotten a put	lic IP, you can sl	in this sten.
Step 1, Dial to ISP If you have already gotten a pub	ilic IP, you can sl	kip this step.
	lic IP, you can sl	kip this step. Dial
	lic IP, you can sl	
If you have already gotten a pub	lic IP, you can sl	

3. In Step 2. Connect to VPN Server, click Insert button to add a new entry.

If an IPSec-based service is selected as shown below,



Session Name:	Office	
VPN Server IP/HO	5T Name(s	uch as 123.45.67.89 or draytek.com)
192.168.1.1		
User Name :	die re	
Password :		*
Type of VPN		
О РРТР		OLZTP
IPSec Tunn	nel	OL2TP over IPSec
PPTP Encryption No encrypt Require an	iom	
Maximum s		w vption
		on remote network

You may further specify the method you use to get IP, the security method, and authentication method. If the Pre-Shared Key is selected, it should be consistent with the one set in VPN router.

My IP : 172.16.3.10	00 🗸 🗸
Type of IPSec	
O Standard IPSec Tunnel	
Remote Subnet :	
Remote Subnet Mask :	255 255 255 0
Virture IP Dray	·Tek Virture Interface 💊
💿 Obtain an IP address	automatically (DHCP over IPSec
O Specify an IP address	
IP Address:	15 160 1 200
Subnet Mask:	55 55 255 0
Security Method	
Security Method O Medium(AH)) High(ESP)
	High(ESP)
Medium(AH) (
Medium(AH) (
O Medium(AH) (MBS	

If a PPP-based service is selected, you should further specify the remote VPN server IP address, Username, Password, and encryption method. The User Name and Password should be consistent with the one set up in the VPN router. To use default gateway on remote network means that all the packets of remote host will be directed to VPN server then forwarded to Internet. This will make the remote host seem to be working in the enterprise network.



Session Name:	office		
VPN Server IP/HC)ST Name(s	uch as 123.45.67.89 or draytek.com)	
192.168.1.1			
User Name :	draytek_user1		
Password :	****		
Type of VPN			
• PPTP		OL2TP	
O IPSec Tun	nel	OL2TP over IPSec	
PPTP Encryption No encryp Require en Maximum	ition ncryption	cryption	
		n remote network	

4. Click **Connect** button to build connection. When the connection is successful, you will find a green light on the right down corner.

4.3 QoS Setting Example

Assume a teleworker sometimes works at home and takes care of children. When working time, he would use Vigor router at home to connect to the server in the headquarter office downtown via either HTTPS or VPN to check email and access internal database. Meanwhile, children may chat on Skype in the restroom.

1. Go to Bandwidth Management>>Quality of Service.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setu
WAN2	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setur

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		Edit	
Class 2		Edit	Edit
Class 3		Edit	

2. Click **Setup** link of WAN 1. Make sure the QoS Control on the left corner is checked. And select **BOTH** in **Direction**.

Bar	ndwidth Mar	nagement >>	Qual	ity o	of Servi	ce	
Ge	neral Setup						
~	Enable the	QoS Control	OUT	*			
	١	WAN Inbound E	IN OUT				100 0
	٧	WAN Outbound	BOTH	mat	th		100 0
	Index		Clas	s Na	ame		
	Class 1						

3. Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 1 by clicking **Edit** link. Type the name "**E-mail**" for Class 1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Class Inc Name	lex #1 E-mail					
NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type	
1	Empty	-	-	-	-	
Add Edit Delete						
		ſ	OK Cancel	7		

4. For this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth (e.g., 25%) for **E-mail** using protocol POP3 and SMTP.

General Setup		
Enable the	QoS Control BOTH	
N 1	VAN Inbound Bandwidth	10000 Kbps
\ \	VAN Outbound Bandwidth	10000 Kbps
Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1	E-mail	25 %
Class 2		25 %
Class 3		25 %
	Others	25 %
	Bandwidth Control CP ACK Prioritize	Limited_bandwidth Ratio 25 % Online Statistics
	OK Clear	Cancel

Return to previous page. Enter the Name of Index Class 2 by clicking Edit link. In this index, the user will set reserved bandwidth for HTTPS. And click OK.
 Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

					ITTPS	ne H
уре	Service Ty	DiffServ CodePoint	Remote Address	Local Address	Status	NO
	ANY	ANY	Any	Any	Active	1 🔿
	ANY	_	Any		Active	10

6. Click **Setup** link for WAN1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<u>Setup</u>
WAN2	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setup

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1	E-mail	Edit	
Class 2	HTTPS	Edit	Edit
Class 3		Edit	

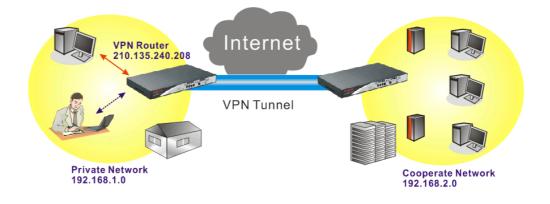
7. Check **Enable UDP Bandwidth Control** on the bottom to prevent enormous UDP traffic of VoIP influent other application. Click **OK**.

General Setup						
Enable the	QoS Control BOTH					
v	VAN Inbound Bandwidth	10000 Kbps				
v	VAN Outbound Bandwidth	10000 Kbps				
Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio				
Class 1	E-mail	25 %				
Class 2	HTTPS	25 %				
Class 3		25 %				
	Others	25 %				
1	Bandwidth Control CP ACK Prioritize	Limited_bandwidth Ratio 25 % Online Statistics				
	OK Clear	Cancel				

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

8. If the worker has connected to the headquarter using host to host VPN tunnel. (Please refer to Chapter 3 VPN for detail instruction), he may set up an index for it. Enter the





Class Name of Index 3. In this index, he will set reserved bandwidth for 1 VPN tunnel.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

me	VPN				
NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 🔿	Inactive	Any	Any	ANY	undefined
		2	Add Edit Delete		

9. Click **Edit** to open the following window. Check the **ACT** box, first.

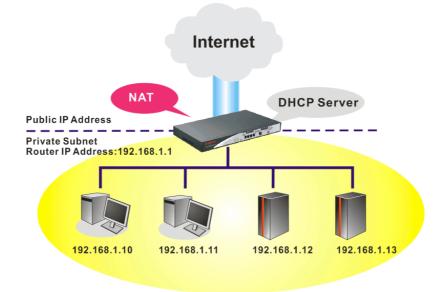
🗹 ACT		
Local Address	Any	Edit
Remote Address	Any	Edit
DiffServ CodePoint	ANY	~
Service Type	ANY	~
Note: Please choose/se	tup the <u>Service Typ</u>	e first.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

10. Then click **Edit** of **Local Address** to set a worker's subnet address. Click **Edit** of **Remote Address** to set headquarter's IP address. Leave other fields and click **OK**.

4.4 LAN - Created by Using NAT

An example of default setting and the corresponding deployment are shown below. The default Vigor router private IP address/Subnet Mask is 192.168.1.1/255.255.255.0. The built-in DHCP server is enabled so it assigns every local NATed host an IP address of 192.168.1.x starting from 192.168.1.10.



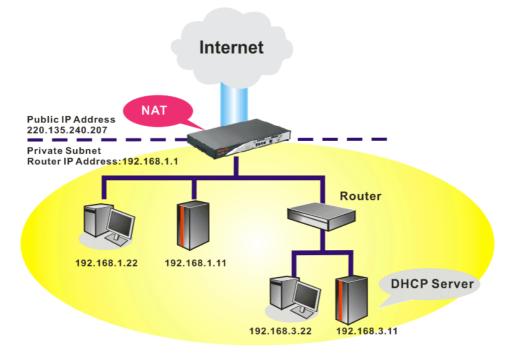
You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

LAN >> General Setup

LAN IP Network Confi	guration	DHCP Server Configur	DHCP Server Configuration		
The xxx.xxx.xxx.249 module. For NAT Usage	had been used by VoIP	 ● Enable Server ○ Disable Server Relay Agent: ○ 1st Subnet ○ 2nd Subnet 			
1st IP Address	192.168.1.1	Start IP Address	192.168.1.10		
1st Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	IP Pool Counts	50		
For IP Routing Usage (2nd IP Address	Enable Disable 192.168.2.1	Gateway IP Address DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent	192.168.1.1		
2nd Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0 2nd Subnet DHCP Server	DNS Server IP Address	-		
RIP Protocol Control	Disable 🗸	Primary IP Address Secondary IP Address			

Dray Tek

To use another DHCP server in the network rather than the built-in one of Vigor Router, you have to change the settings as show below.



You can just set the settings wrapped inside the red rectangles to fit the request of NAT usage.

LAN	>>	General	Setup
-	~ ~	oonora	occup

9 Setup			
on	DHCP Server Configuration		
en used by VoIP			
	Relay Agent: O 1st Subnet O 2nd Subnet		
.168.1.1	Start IP Address	192.168.1.10	
.255.255.0	IP Pool Counts	50	
ole 💿 Disable	Gateway IP Address	192.168.1.1	
.168.2.1	DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent		
.255.255.0	, 5		
ubnet DHCP Server	DNS Server IP Address Force DNS manual set	ting	
able 💌	Primary IP Address		
	Secondary IP Address		
-	en used by VoIP 168.1.1 255.255.0 ble () Disable 168.2.1 255.255.0 bnet DHCP Server	en used by VoIP Interpretation of the server server bisable server bisable interpretation of the server is the se	

4.5 Upgrade Firmware for Your Router

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The file **RTSxxx.exe** will be asked to copy onto your computer. Remember the place of storing the execution file.

1. Go to www.draytek.com.



2. Access into **Support** >> **Downloads**. Please find out **Firmware** menu and click it. Search the model you have and click on it to download the newly update firmware for your router.

	About DrayTek	Products	Support	Education	Partners	Contact Us
ome > Support > Download	S					
Downloads - Firmware					Downlo	ads
Model Name	Firmware Version	Rel	lease Date		Firmware	
Vigor120 series	3.2.2.1	26	6/06/2009	Driver		
Vigor2100 series 2.6.2 26/		5/02/2008		Utility		
Vigor2104 series	2.5.7.3	25/06/2009 Datash		Utility Introduction		
Vigor2110 series	3.3.0					
Vigor2200/X/W/E	2.3.11			R&TTE C		
Vigor2200Eplus	2.5.7	18	3/02/2009		- Ralle C	ennication
Vigor2200USB	2.3.10	16	6/03/2005			

3. Access into **Support** >> **Downloads**. Please find out **Utility** menu and click it.

ome > Support > Ut	ility	About I	DrayTek Prodi	ucts Suppo	rt Education	Partners	Contact U
Utility						Downlo	ads
Tools Name	Release Date	Version	OS	Supp	ort Model	Firmware	
Router Tools	2009/06/18	4.2.0	MS-Windows	All	Modules	Driver	
Syslog Tools	2009/06/18	4.2.0	MS-Windows X	P All	Modules	Driver	
			MS-Vista			Utility	
VigorPro Alert Notice	2009/06/03	1.1.0	MS-Windows X		o 100 series	Utility In	troduction
Tools		(Multi- language)	MS-Vista	-	o 5500 series o 5510 series	Datashee	t
		languago ,		-	5300 series	R&TTE C	ertification
Smart VPN Client	2009/05/25	3.6.3	MS-Windows X	P All	Modules		
		(Multi- language)	MS-Vista				
Smart Monitor	2009/03/25	2.0	MS-Windows X	P Vigora	950 series		

- 4. Click on the link of **Router Tools** to download the file. After downloading the files, please decompressed the file onto your host.
- 5. Double click on the router tool icon. The setup wizard will appear.



6. Follow the onscreen instructions to install the tool. Finally, click **Finish** to end the installation.



7. From the Start menu, open **Programs** and choose **Router Tools XXX** >> **Firmware Upgrade Utility**.

៉ Firmware Upgrade	Utility 3.5.1	
Time Out(Sec.) 5	Router IP:	
Port	Firmware file:	
69		
Password:	Abort	Send

- 8. Type in your router IP, usually **192.168.1.1**.
- 9. Click the button to the right side of Firmware file typing box. Locate the files that you download from the company web sites. You will find out two files with different extension names, **xxxx.all** (keep the old custom settings) and **xxxx.rst** (reset all the custom settings to default settings). Choose any one of them that you need.

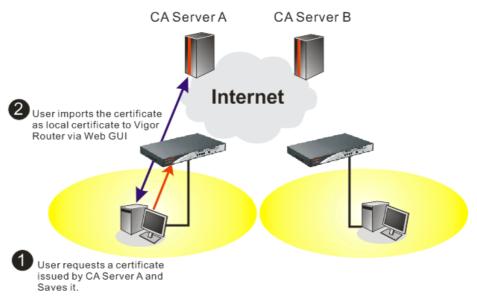
៉ Firmware Upgrade	: Utility 3.5.1
Time Out(Sec.)	Router IP:
Port	Firmware file:
69 Password:	C:\Documents and Settings\Carrie
	Abort Send

10. Click Send.

៉ Firmware Upgrade	Utility 3.5.1
Time Out(Sec.)	Router IP:
Port	Firmware file:
69 Password:	C:\Documents and Settings\Carrie
	Abort Send
Sending	

Now the firmware update is finished.

4.6 Request a certificate from a CA server on Windows CA Server



1. Go to **Certificate Management** and choose **Local Certificate**. Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certifica	ate Configuration		
Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Local			View Delete
GENERATE	IMPORT REFRESH		
X509 Local	Certificate		
			<u>~</u>
			~

VigorIPPBX 3510 Series User's Guide

2. You can click **GENERATE** button to start to edit a certificate request. Enter the information in the certificate request.

Subject Alternative Name			
Туре	Domain Name 💌		
IP	draytek.com		
Subject Name			
Country (C)	TW		
State (ST)			
Location (L)			
Orginization (O)	Draytek		
Orginization Unit (OU)			
Common Name (CN)			
Email (E)	press@draytek.com		
Кеу Туре	RSA V		
Key Size	1024 Bit 🕶		

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

3. Copy and save the X509 Local Certificate Requet as a text file and save it for later use. Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

	Subject	Status	Modify
Local	/C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/	Requesting	View Delete
ENERATE X509 L	IMPORT REFRESH		
MIIBn7 EwdEcn cmF5d3 OTS2S2	EGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST CCAQYCAQAWXTELMAKGAIUEBhMCVFcxCzAJ F5dGVFMQswCQTDVQQLEwJSRDEIMCAGCSqG VrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOB Qdw1Reltv1HnVwm/MFC099x+XEwNK646jd tj7HbNodYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAgb100 tp/2020WsCddxh/Hz23Ys5mbC0CAwEAAaAA	SID3DQEJARYTC jQAwgYkCgYEAy GY1LSAvJTduHH c/lsYN/smGb4N	3VwcG9ydEBk ZELVTVBytix 90z40MWx02G +Pbo4VM01V0

4. Connect to CA server via web browser. Follow the instruction to submit the request. Below we take a Windows 2000 CA server for example. Select **Request a Certificate**.

Microsoft Certificate Services vigor	<u>Home</u>
Welcome	
You use this web site to request a certificate for your web browser, e-mail client, or other secure program. Once you acquire a certificate, will be able to securely identify yourself to other people over the web, sign your e-mail messages, encrypt your e-mail messages, and mor depending upon the type of certificate you request.	
Select a task: © Retrieve the CA certificate or certificate revocation list	
○ Request a certificate	
O Check on a pending certificate	
Next	>

Dray Tek

Select Advanced request.

Microsoft Certificate Services vigor	<u>Home</u>
Choose Request Type	
Please select the type of request you would like to make:	
O User certificate request:	
 Advanced request 	
Nex	t >

Select Submit a certificate request a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #7 file

Microsoft Certificate Services vigor	Home
Advanced Certificate Requests	
You can request a certificate for yourself, another user, or a computer using one of the following methods authority (CA) will determine the certificates that you can obtain.	. Note that the policy of the certification
○ Submit a certificate request to this CA using a form.	
● Submit a certificate request using a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a renewal request using a base64 encoded PKCS #10 file or a	ase64 encoded PKCS #7 file.
 Request a certificate for a smart card on behalf of another user using the Smart Card Enrollment Sta You must have an enrollment agent certificate to submit a request for another user. 	tion.

Import the X509 Local Certificate Requet text file. Select **Router (Offline request)** or **IPSec (Offline request)** below.

	te Services vigor	Ho
Submit A Save	d Request	
server) into the n		request or PKCS #7 renewal request generated by an external application (such as a web to the certification authority (CA).
Saved Request:		
Certificate Request	BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQ HIIBGJCCARHCAQAWQTELMAKGAI BgkqhkiG90BCC@VEXByZNN2GC A4GNADCBIQKBgQDQYB7wm2FfFh hX4bpB9cUF9dloACGGiN/tcB0c x/G0A7CTvO/fQ2pxroCw1JTLS	EBhMCVFcxEDAO yTX102MsuY29t 9/I@QnG03Xk++ dc2dFFv1XcP3
	Browse for a file to insert.	
Certificate Templa	ator	
certificate relitpla	Administrator	
	Administrator Administrator Authenticated Session Basic EFS EFS Recovery Agent	
	User IPSEC (Offline request) Router (Offline request)	
	Subordinate Certification Authority Web Server	Submit >

Then you have done the request and the server now issues you a certificate. Select **Base 64 encoded** certificate and **Download CA certificate**. Now you should get a certificate (.cer file) and save it.

5. Back to Vigor router, go to **Local Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh



and you will find the below window showing "-----BEGINE CERTIFICATE-----""

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

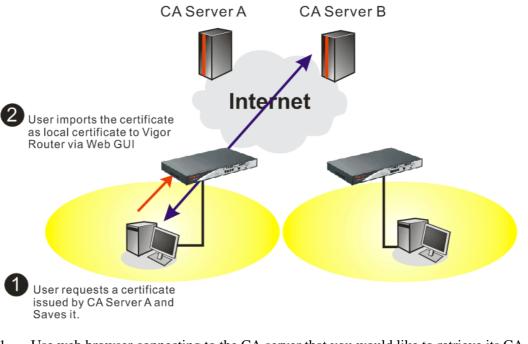
IMPORT REFRESH X509 Local Certificate Request BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxCzAJBgNVBAgTAkhTNRAwDgYDVQQK EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDE1MCAGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAA0BjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTVBytix OTS2S2Qdw1Re1tv1HnVwm/MFC0y9x+XEwNKG46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH90z40MWx02G mASV0Rtj7HbN0dYn88p1xRrQFgK8nkbMLdAqb10oc/1sYN/smCb4N+Pbo4VM01V0 dKiyAPfp/Z020WsCddxh/HzZ3Ys8m60CAwEAAaAMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAA4GB AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQ01ZL1XRn+0VdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCKaDQ7 nacBqc1WOcKxESOdyDc8mtIf7K+i045SeuY7nxswXvPI0n31JMJGMZvQSVrTYu s0vJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjD0MX16czTiybedZSsrJw	Name	Subject	Status	Modify
X509 Local Certificate Request BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxCzAJBgNVBAgTAkhTMRAwDgYDVQQK EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDEiMCAGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTVBytix OTSZSZQdw1Reltv1HnVwm/MFC0y9x+XEwNKG46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH9Oz4OMWx02G mASVORtj7HbNOdYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAqb1Ooc/lsYN/smGb4N+Pbo4VM01VO dKiyAPfp/Z020WsCddxh/HzZ3Ys8m60CAwEAAaAMAMGCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAA4GB ACNB9O71V44sgXw1WnXHJvdFLDOdwcQ01ZL1XRn+OVdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCKaDQ7 nacBqEc1WOchKzESOdyDc8mtIf7k+i045SeuY7nxswXvPIOn31JMJGMZvQSVrTYu sOvJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjDoMX16czT1ybedZSsrJw	Local	/C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/	Requesting	View Delete
BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST MIIBNTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAKGA1UEBhMCVFcxCzAJBgNVBAgTAkhTMRAwDgYDVQQK EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDEiMCAGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTVBytix OTSZSZQdw1Re1tv1HnVwm/MFC0y9x+XEwNKG46jdGY1LSAvJTduHH90z4OMWx02G mASVORtj7HbNOdYn88p1xRrQFgK8nkbMLdAqb10oc/1sYN/smGb4N+Pbo4VM01V0 dKiyAPfp/Z020WsCddxh/HzZ3Ys8m60CAwEAAaAMAMGCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAA4GB AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQ01ZL1XRn+0VdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCKaDQ7 nacBqc1W0CKKzESOdyDc8mtIf7k+i045SeuY7nxsWXPIOn31JMJGMZvQSVrTYu sOvJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjD0MX16czTiybedZSsrJw	GENERATE	IMPORT REFRESH		
MIIBnTCCAQYCAQAwXTELMAkGA1UEBhMCVFcxCzAJBgNVBAgTAkhTMRAwDgYDVQQK EwdEcmF5dGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDEiMCAGCSqGSIb3DQEJARYTc3VwcG9ydEBk cmF5dGVrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOBjQAwgYkCgYEAyZELVTVBytix OTSZSZQdw1Reltv1HnVwm/MFCOy9x+XEwNKG46jdGY1LSAv/JTduHH9Oz4OMWx02G mASVORtj7HbNOdYn88p1xRrQFgk8nkbMLdAqb10oc/1sYN/smGb4N+Pbo4VM01V0 dKiyAPfp/Z020WsCddxh/HzZ3Ys8m60CAwEAAaAMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAA4GB AGNB9071V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLD0dwcQ01ZL1XRn+0VdheJjvaISCgiqzJQCKaDQ7 nacBqEc1W0cHKzESOdyDc8mtIf7k+i045SeuY7nxsWxPIOn31JMJGMZvQSVrTYu sOvJGBHHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjD0MX16czT1ybedZSsrJw	X509 L	ocal Certificate Request		
END CERTIFICATE REQUEST		_		~

6. You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

Name :	Local
Issuer :	/C=US/CN=vigor
Subject :	/emailAddress=press@draytek.com/C=TVWO=Draytek
Subject Alternative Name :	DNS:draytek.com
Valid From :	Aug 30 23:08:43 2005 GMT
Valid To :	Aug 30 23:17:47 2007 GMT

Dray Tek

4.7 Request a CA Certificate and Set as Trusted on Windows CA Server



1. Use web browser connecting to the CA server that you would like to retrieve its CA certificate. Click **Retrive the CA certificate or certificate recoring list**.

Microsoft Certificate Se	rvices - Microsofi I	nternet Explorer	
檔案(F) 編輯(E) 檢視(Y) 我的最愛(A) 工	具(I) 說明(H)	
🔇 1 ត្ 🔹 🔘 - [2 🗟 🔬 🎉) 搜尋 📩 我的最爱 🜒 媒體 🥝 🍃 چ 📃 🔸	3
图址(D) Chttp://172.16.2.17	9/certsrv/		😪 ラ 移至 / 連結 /
nsn ^e -	🔌 🔎 搜	章 🔹 🛃 醒目提示 🚮 選項 🛛 封鎖快顯親窗 (319) 🔹 🥃 B	lotnail 🚜 Messenger 🔞 我的 MSN
<i>Microsoft</i> Certificate Se Welcome	rvices – vigor		Home
Welcome		tifieste far vour web broweer, e mail client, er alber r	
Welcome You use this web site will be able to secure	to request a ce	tificate for your web browser, e-mail client, or other s If to other people over the web, sign your e-mail mes	ecure program. Once yoù acquire a certificate, you
Welcome You use this web site	to request a ce	elf to other people over the web, sign your e-mail mea	ecure program. Once you acquire a certificate, you
Welcome You use this web site will be able to secure depending upon the t Select a task:	to request a ce ly identify yourse type of certificate	If to other people over the web, sign your e-mail mes you request.	ecure program. Once you acquire a certificate, you
Welcome You use this web site will be able to secure depending upon the t Select a task:	to request a ce ly identify yours ype of certificate A certificate or c	elf to other people over the web, sign your e-mail mea	ecure program. Once you acquire a certificate, you



- 2. In Choose file to download, click CA Certificate Current and Base 64 encoded, and Download CA certificate to save the .cer. file.
 - Microsoft Certificate Services Microsoft Internet Explorer 檔案(P) 編輯(E) 檢視(V) 我的最愛(A) 工具(I) 說明(H) 🌀 上—頁 • 🜍 - 🛃 🛃 🗳 🔎 搜尋 📌 我的最爱 🜒 媒體 🚱 🍰 漫 • 🥸 - 🔁 移至 連結 網址(D) 截 http://172.16.2.179/certsrv/certcarc.asp 3 msn^{*} * 💉 🔎 搜尋 • 🛃 醒目提示 建項 🔀 封鎖快顯視窗 (319) 🔹 🔤 Hotmail 🚢 Messenger [2 我的 MSN Retrieve The CA Certificate Or Certificate Revocation List Install this CA certification path to allow your computer to trust certificates issued from this certification authority. It is not necessary to manually install the CA certification path if you request and install a certificate from this certification authority, because the CA certification path will be installed for you automatically. Choose file to download: CA Certificate: Current (vigor(1)) Previous [vigor] Download CA certificate Download CA certification path Download latest certificate revocation list
- 3. Back to Vigor router, go to **Trusted CA Certificate**. Click **IMPORT** button and browse the file to import the certificate (.cer file) into Vigor router. When finished, click refresh and you will find the below illustration.

Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration Status Subject Modify Name Trusted CA-1 View Delete Not Yet Valid /C=US/CN=vigor Trusted CA-2 Delete _ _ _ View Trusted CA-3 ____ ____ View Delete IMPORT REFRESH

4. You may review the detail information of the certificate by clicking **View** button.

	icate Detail Information	
Certificate Name:	Trusted CA-1	
Issuer:	/C=US/CN=vigor	
Subject:	/C=US/CN=vigor	< >
Subject Alternative Name:	DNS:draytek.com	< >
Valid From:	Aug 31 23:04:12 2009 GMT	
Valid To:	Aug 31 23:13:47 2010 GMT	
	Close	

Dray Tek

This page is left blank.



Chapter 5: Reference -Advanced Web Configuration

After finished basic configuration of the router, you can access Internet with ease. For the people who want to adjust more setting for suiting his/her request, please refer to this chapter for getting detailed information about the advanced configuration of this router. As for other examples of application, please refer to chapter 4.

5.1 WAN

Quick Start Wizard offers user an easy method to quick setup the connection mode for the router. Moreover, if you want to adjust more settings for different WAN modes, please go to **WAN** group and click the **Internet Access** link.

5.1.1 Basics of Internet Protocol (IP) Network

IP means Internet Protocol. Every device in an IP-based Network including routers, print server, and host PCs, needs an IP address to identify its location on the network. To avoid address conflicts, IP addresses are publicly registered with the Network Information Centre (NIC). Having a unique IP address is mandatory for those devices participated in the public network but not in the private TCP/IP local area networks (LANs), such as host PCs under the management of a router since they do not need to be accessed by the public. Hence, the NIC has reserved certain addresses that will never be registered publicly. These are known as *private* IP addresses, and are listed in the following ranges:

From 10.0.0.0 to 10.255.255.255 From 172.16.0.0 to 172.31.255.255 From 192.168.0.0 to 192.168.255.255

What are Public IP Address and Private IP Address

As the router plays a role to manage and further protect its LAN, it interconnects groups of host PCs. Each of them has a private IP address assigned by the built-in DHCP server of the Vigor router. The router itself will also use the default **private IP** address: 192.168.1.1 to communicate with the local hosts. Meanwhile, Vigor router will communicate with other network devices through a **public IP** address. When the data flow passing through, the Network Address Translation (NAT) function of the router will dedicate to translate public/private addresses, and the packets will be delivered to the correct host PC in the local area network. Thus, all the host PCs can share a common Internet connection.

Get Your Public IP Address from ISP

In ADSL deployment, the PPP (Point to Point)-style authentication and authorization is required for bridging customer premises equipment (CPE). Point to Point Protocol over Ethernet (PPPoE) connects a network of hosts via an access device to a remote access concentrator or aggregation concentrator. This implementation provides users with significant ease of use. Meanwhile it provides access control, billing, and type of service according to user requirement.

When a router begins to connect to your ISP, a serial of discovery process will occur to ask for a connection. Then a session will be created. Your user ID and password is authenticated



via **PAP** or **CHAP** with **RADIUS** authentication system. And your IP address, DNS server, and other related information will usually be assigned by your ISP.

5.1.2 Network Connection by 3G USB Modem

For 3G mobile communication through Access Point is popular more and more, Vigor3510 adds the function of 3G network connection for such purpose. By connecting 3G USB Modem to the USB port of Vigor3510, it can support HSDPA/UMTS/EDGE/GPRS/GSM and the future 3G standard (HSUPA, etc). Vigor3510 with 3G USB Modem allows you to receive 3G signals at any place such as your car or certain location holding outdoor activity and share the bandwidth for using by more people. Users can use four LAN ports on the router to access Internet.



After connecting into the router, 3G USB Modem will be regarded as the second WAN port. However, the original Ethernet WAN1 still can be used and Load-Balance can be done in the router. Besides, 3G USB Modem in WAN2 also can be used as backup device. Therefore, when WAN1 is not available, the router will use 3.5G for supporting automatically. The supported 3G USB Modem will be listed on Draytek web site. Please visit www.draytek.com for more detailed information.

Below shows the menu items for Internet Access.



5.1.3 General Setup

This section will introduce some general settings of Internet and explain the connection modes for WAN1 and WAN2 in details.

This router supports dual WAN function. It allows users to access Internet and combine the bandwidth of the dual WAN to speed up the transmission through the network. Each WAN port (WAN1- through WAN port/WAN2- through LAN1 port) can connect to different ISPs, Even if the ISPs use different technology to provide telecommunication service (such as DSL, Cable modem, etc.). If any connection problem occurred on one of the ISP connections, all the traffic will be guided and switched to the normal communication port for proper operation. Please configure WAN1 and WAN2 settings.

This webpage allows you to set general setup for WAN1 and WAN respectively.

Note: In default, WAN1 is enabled. WAN2 is optional.



WAN >> General Setup

General Setup			
WAN1		WAN2	
Enable:	Yes 🕶	Enable:	Yes 🕶
Display Name:		Display Name:	
Physical Mode:	Ethernet	Physical Mode:	3G USB Modem 🔽
Physical Type:	Auto negotiation 👻	Physical Type:	Auto negotiation 🗸
Load Balance Mode:	Auto Weight	Load Balance Mode:	Auto Weight 👻
Line Speed(Kbps):	DownLink 0	Line Speed(Kbps):	DownLink 0
	UpLink 0		UpLink 0
Active Mode:	Always On 🛛 👻	Active Mode:	Always On 🗸
Active on demand:		Active on demand:	
🔾 WAN2 Fail		🔿 WAN1 Fail	
WAN2 Upload specific equations where the specific equation is a specific equation of the spec	ed exceed 0 Kbps	WAN1 Upload specific specie	eed exceed 0 Kbps
WAN2 Download	speed exceed 0 Kbps	WAN1 Download	speed exceed 0 Kbps

OK

Enable	Choose Yes to invoke the settings for this WAN interface. Choose No to disable the settings for this WAN interface.	
Display Name	Type the description for the WAN1/WAN2 interface.	
Physical Mode	For WAN1, the physical connection is done and fixed throug Ethernet port; yet the physical connection for WAN2 is done through an Ethernet port (P1) or USB port.	
	Physical Mode:	Ethernet Ethernet 3G USB Modem

To use 3G network connection through 3G USB Modem, choose **3G USB Modem** as the physical mode in **WAN2**. Next, go to **WAN>> Internet Access**. 3G USB Modem is available for WAN2. You can choose **PPP** as the access mode and click Details Page for further configuration.

WAN >> Internet Access

Index Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode	
WAN1	Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP 💌	Details Page
WAN2	3G USB Modem	None 💌	Details Page
		None PPP	

Physical Type

You can change the physical type for WAN2 or choose **Auto negotiation** for determined by the system.

Physical Type:

Auto negotiation	*
Auto negotiation	
10M half duplex	
10M full duplex	
100M half duplex	
100M full duplex	



Load Balance Mode	ad Balance Mode If you know the practical bandwidth for your W please choose the setting of According to Line Otherwise, please choose Auto Weigh to let the the best load balance.		
	Load Balance Mode: Auto Weigh Auto Weigh According to Line S	Speed	
Line Speed	If your choose According to Line Speed as the Load Balance Mode , please type the line speed for downloading and uploading through WAN1/WAN2. The unit is kbps.		
Active Mode	Choose Always On to make the WAN connect (WAN1/WAN2) being activated always; or ch demand to make the WAN connection (WAN activated if it is necessary.	noose Active on	
	Active Mode: Active on demand Always On Active on demand	~	
	 If you choose Active on demand, the Idle Tim available for you to set for PPPoE and PPTP a the Details Page of WAN>>Internet Access. I are three selections for you to choose for diffe WAN2 Fail – It means the connection for WA activated when WAN2 is failed. WAN2 Upload speed exceed XX kbps – It m connection for WAN1 will be activated when speed exceed certain value that you set in this seconds. WAN2 Download speed exceed XX kbps – If connection for WAN1 will be activated when Download speed exceed certain value that you for 15 seconds. WAN1 Fail – It means the connection for WA activated when WAN1 is failed. WAN1 Upload speed exceed XX kbps – It m connection for WAN1 will be activated when Download speed exceed certain value that you for 15 seconds. WAN1 Fail – It means the connection for WA activated when WAN1 is failed. WAN1 Upload speed exceed XX kbps – It m connection for WAN2 will be activated when speed exceed certain value that you set in this failed. 	access modes in n addition, there rent purposes. AN1 will be heans the WAN2 Upload box for 15 t means the WAN2 set in this box AN2 will be heans the WAN1 Upload	
	 Speed exceed certain value that you set in this seconds. WAN1 Download speed exceed XX kbps– If connection for WAN2 will be activated when Download speed exceed certain value that you for 15 seconds. 	t means the WAN1	



5.1.4 Internet Access

For the router supports dual WAN function, the users can set different WAN settings (for WAN1/WAN2) for Internet Access. Due to different Physical Mode for WAN1 and WAN2, the Access Mode for these two connections also varies slightly.

WAN >> Internet Access

Index Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode
WAN1	Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP 👻 Details Page
AN2	3G USB Modem	None Details Page
		None
		PPP

WAN >> Internet Access

Index	Display Name	Physical Mode	Access Mode
VAN1		Ethernet	Static or Dynamic IP 💌 Details Page
WAN2		Ethernet	None
			None PPPoE Static or Dynamic IP PPTP/L2TP

Index	It shows the WAN modes that this router supports. WAN1 is the default WAN interface for accessing into the Internet. WAN2 is the optional WAN interface for accessing into the Internet when WAN 1 is inactive for some reason.		
Display Name	It shows the name of the WAN1/WAN2 that entered in general setup.		
Physical Mode	It shows the physica (Ethernet or 3G USE connection. Physical Mode		N1 (Ethernet) /WAN2 to the real network
	Ethernet	Ethernet	
	3G USB Modem	Ethernet	
Access Mode	Use the drop down list to choose a proper access mode. The detai page of that mode will be popped up. If not, click Details Page for accessing the page to configure the settings. Static or Dynamic IP None PPPoE Static or Dynamic IP PPTP/L2TP		

There are three access modes provided for PPPoE, Static or Dynamic IP and PPTP/L2TP.

Details Page This button will open different web page according to the access mode that you choose in WAN1 or WAN2.

Details Page for PPPoE

To use **PPPoE** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **PPPoE** mode for WAN2. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access					
WAN 1					
PPPoE Client Mode		PPP/MP Setup			
🔿 Enable 💿 Disable		PPP Authentication	PAP or CHAP		
		 Idle Timeout	-1 second(s)		
ISP Access Setup		IP Address Assignmen	IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP)		
Username		WAN IP Alias			
Password		Fixed IP: O Yes O No	(Dynamic IP)		
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u>	Setup:	Fixed IP Address			
=>,,	,				
		 Default MAC Addres 	S		
WAN Connection Detec	tion	Specify a MAC Add	ress		
Mode	ARP Detect 💌	MAC Address:			
Ping IP		00 .50 .7F :00 .0	0.01		
TTL:					

Enable/Disable	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
ISP Access Setup	Enter your allocated username, password and authentication parameters according to the information provided by your ISP. Username – Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. Password – Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application – Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
WAN Connection Detection	 Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.
PPP/MP Setup	 PPP Authentication – Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP. If you want to connect to Internet all the time, you can check Always On. Idle Timeout – Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.
IP Address	Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you



Assignment Method (IPCP)

connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function.

WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the current one you are using. Notice that this setting is available for WAN1 only.

Ć	🏉 WANOIP Alias - Windows Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 🔀				
e	🦻 http://192.168.1.1/doc/WIpAlias.htm 🛛 👻				
	WANO 1	(P Alias ((Multi-NAT)		
	Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool	
	1.	v		v	
	2.				
	3.				
	4.				
	5.				
	6.				
	7.				
	8.				
			OK Clear All	Close	

Fixed IP – Click **Yes** to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box of **Fixed IP Address**.

Default MAC Address – You can use **Default MAC Address** or specify another MAC address by typing on the boxes of MAC Address for the router.

Specify a MAC Address – Type the MAC address for the router manually.

After finishing all the settings here, please click **OK** to activate them.

Details Page for Static or Dynamic IP

For static IP mode, you usually receive a fixed public IP address or a public subnet, namely multiple public IP addresses from your DSL or Cable ISP service providers. In most cases, a Cable service provider will offer a fixed public IP, while a DSL service provider will offer a public subnet. If you have a public subnet, you could assign an IP address or many IP address to the WAN interface.

To use **Static or Dynamic IP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Static or Dynamic IP** mode from **Internet Access** menu. The following web page will be shown.



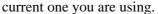
WAN >> Internet Access

WAN 1

Static or Dynamic IP (DHCP Client) ③ Enable 〇 Disable		WAN IP Network Settings WAN IP Alias Obtain an IP address automatically 			
Keep WAN Connection Enable PING to keep a PING to the IP PING Interval WAN Connection Detect Mode Ping IP TTL: RIP Protocol Enable RIP	0 minute(s)	Router Name Domain Name * : Required for Specify an II IP Address Subnet Mask Gateway IP Addr DNS Server IP A Primary IP Addr Secondary IP A © Default MAC Specify a M MAC Address: 00 .50 .7F	P address dress Address ess ddress C Address IAC Address	3	* *
	ОК	Cancel			

Access Control	Click Enable for activating this function. If you click Disable , this function will be closed and all the settings that you adjusted in this page will be invalid.
Keep WAN Connection	 Normally, this function is designed for Dynamic IP environments because some ISPs will drop connections if there is no traffic within certain periods of time. Check Enable PING to keep alive box to activate this function. PING to the IP - If you enable the PING function, please specify the IP address for the system to PING it for keeping alive. PING Interval - Enter the interval for the system to execute the PING operation.
WAN Connection Detection	 Such function allows you to verify whether network connection is alive or not through ARP Detect or Ping Detect. Mode – Choose ARP Detect or Ping Detect for the system to execute for WAN detection. Ping IP – If you choose Ping Detect as detection mode, you have to type IP address in this field for pinging. TTL (Time to Live) – Displays value for your reference. TTL value is set by telnet command.
RIP Protocol	Routing Information Protocol is abbreviated as RIP (RFC1058) specifying how routers exchange routing tables information. Click Enable RIP for activating this function.
WAN IP Network Settings	This group allows you to obtain an IP address automatically and allows you type in IP address manually.
	WAN IP Alias - If you have multiple public IP addresses and would like to utilize them on the WAN interface, please use WAN IP Alias. You can set up to 8 public IP addresses other than the





			lindows Internet Explorer	
e] http://192	2.168.1.1/do	c/WIpAlias.htm	*
	WANO 1	IP Alias	(Multi-NAT)	
	Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Join NAT IP Pool
	1.	v		v
	2.			
	з.			
	4.			
	5.			
	6.			
	7.			
	8.			
		_		
			OK Clear All	Close
		TD 1		

Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain the IP address automatically if you want to use **Dynamic IP** mode. *Router Name:* Type in the router name provided by ISP. *Domain Name:* Type in the domain name that you have assigned. **Specify an IP address** – Click this radio button to specify some

data if you want to use **Static IP** mode.

IP Address: Type the IP address.

Subnet Mask: Type the subnet mask.

Gateway IP Address: Type the gateway IP address.

Default MAC Address : Click this radio button to use default MAC address for the router.

Specify a MAC Address: Some Cable service providers specify a specific MAC address for access authentication. In such cases you need to click the **Specify a MAC Address** and enter the MAC address in the MAC Address field.

DNS Server IP Address Type in the primary IP address for the router if you want to use **Static IP** mode. If necessary, type in secondary IP address for necessity in the future.

Details Page for PPTP/L2TP

To use **PPTP/L2TP** as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **PPTP/L2TP** from **Internet Access** menu. The following web page will be shown.

PPTP/L2TP Client Mode	PPP Setup
○Enable PPTP ○Enable L2TP ⊙Disable	PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP 💌
Server Address	Idle Timeout -1 second(s)
Specify Gateway IP Address	IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) WAN IP Alias
	Fixed IP: 🔘 Yes 💿 No (Dynamic IP)
ISP Access Setup	Fixed IP Address
Jsername	WAN IP Network Settings
Password	 Obtain an IP address automatically
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:	 Specify an IP address
=>,,,	IP Address
	Subnet Mask

WAN >> Internet Access

PPTP/L2TP Client Mode	 Enable PPTP- Click this radio button to enable a PPTP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface. Enable L2TP - Click this radio button to enable a L2TP client to establish a tunnel to a DSL modem on the WAN interface. Disable – Click this radio button to close the connection through PPTP or L2TP. Server Address - Specify the IP address of the PPTP/L2TP server if you enable PPTP/L2TP client mode. Specify Gateway IP Address – Specify the gateway IP address for DHCP server.
ISP Access Setup	Username -Type in the username provided by ISP in this field. Password -Type in the password provided by ISP in this field. Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup - You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application – Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.
PPP Setup	PPP Authentication - Select PAP only or PAP or CHAP for PPP. Idle Timeout - Set the timeout for breaking down the Internet after passing through the time without any action.
IP Address Assignment Method(IPCP)	Fixed IP - Usually ISP dynamically assigns IP address to you each time you connect to it and request. In some case, your ISP provides service to always assign you the same IP address whenever you request. In this case, you can fill in this IP address in the Fixed IP field. Please contact your ISP before you want to use this function. Click Yes to use this function and type in a fixed IP address in the box.
	Fixed IP Address - Type a fixed IP address.
WAN IP Network	Obtain an IP address automatically – Click this button to obtain



Settings the IP address automat	ically.
Specify an IP address – Click this radio button IP Address – Type the Subnet Mask – Type	e IP address.

OK

Details Page for PPP

To use **PPP** (for 3G USB Modem) as the accessing protocol of the internet, please choose **Internet Access** from **WAN** menu. Then, select **PPP** mode for WAN2. The following web page will be shown.

WAN >> Internet Access

PPP Client Mode	🔘 Enable 💿 Disable	
SIM PIN code		
Modem Initial String	AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0	(Default:AT&FE0V1X1&D2&C1S0=0)
APN Name		Apply
Modem Dial String	ATDT*99#	(Default:ATDT*99#)
PPP Username		(Optional)
PPP Password		(Optional)
Index(1-15) in <u>Scheo</u>	<u>dule</u> Setup:	
=> ,		

Cancel

Default

PPP Client Mode	Click Enable to activate this mode for WAN2.
SIM PIN code	Type PIN code of the SIM card that will be used to access Internet.
Modem Initial String	Such value is used to initialize USB modem. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP.
APN Name	APN means Access Point Name which is provided and required by some ISPs. Type the name and click Apply.
Modem Dial String	Such value is used to dial through USB mode. Please use the default value. If you have any question, please contact to your ISP.
PPP Username	Type the PPP username (optional).
PPP Password	Type the PPP password (optional).
Index (1-15)	Set the PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this filed is blank and the function will always work.

5.1.5 Load-Balance Policy

This router supports the function of load balancing. It can assign traffic with protocol type, IP address for specific host, a subnet of hosts, and port range to be allocated in WAN1 or WAN2 interface. The user can assign traffic category and force it to go to dedicate network interface based on the following web page setup. Twenty policies of load-balance are supported by this router.

Note: Load-Balance Policy is running only when both WAN1 and WAN2 are activated.

Load-B	Balance I	Policy								
Index	Enable	Protocol	WAN	Src IP Start	Src IP End	Dest IP Start	Dest IP End	Dest Port End	Move Up	Move Down
1		any	WAN1 🗸							<u>Down</u>
2		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>3</u>		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>4</u>		any 🔉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>5</u>		any 🔉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>6</u>		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
Z		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>8</u>		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>9</u>		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<u>10</u>		any 💉	WAN1 🗸						<u>UP</u>	<u>Down</u>
<< <u>1-10</u>	<u>11-20</u> >	>>							1	Vext >:

WAN >> Load-Balance Policy

Γ	OK	٦

Index	Click the number of index to access into the load-balance policy configuration web page.
Enable	Check this box to enable this policy.
Protocol	Use the drop-down menu to change the protocol for the WAN interface.
WAN	Use the drop-down menu to change the WAN interface.
Src IP Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the source IP.
Src IP End	Displays the IP address for the end of the source IP.
Dest IP Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the destination IP.
Dest IP End	Displays the IP address for the end of the destination IP.
Dest Port Start	Displays the IP address for the start of the destination port.
Dest Port End	Displays the IP address for the end of the destination port.



Move UP/Move Down Use Up or Down link to move the order of the policy.

Click Index 1 to access into the following page for configuring load-balance policy.

WAN >> Load-Balance Policy

Index: 1		
Er	able	
Protoc		any
Bindin	g WAN Interface	WAN1 🗸
Src IP	Start	
Src IP	End	
Dest I	IP Start	
Dest I	IP End	
Dest F	Port Start	
Dest F	Port End	
	ОК	Cancel
Enable	Check this box to	enable this policy.
Protocol	Use the drop-down interface.	n menu to choose a proper protocol for the WAN
	Protocol	any TCP UDP TCP/UDP ICMP IGMP
Binding WAN interface	Choose the WAN	interface (WAN1 or WAN2) for binding.
Src IP Start	Type the source II	P start for the specified WAN interface.
Src IP End	field is blank, it m	P end for the specified WAN interface. If this eans that all the source IPs inside the LAN will the WAN interface.
Dest IP Start	Type the destination	on IP start for the specified WAN interface.
Dest IP End	• •	on IP end for the specified WAN interface. If thi eans that all the destination IPs will be passed interface.
Dest Port Start	Type the destination	on port start for the destination IP.
Dest Port End	• •	on port end for the destination IP. If this field is at all the destination ports will be passed through e.

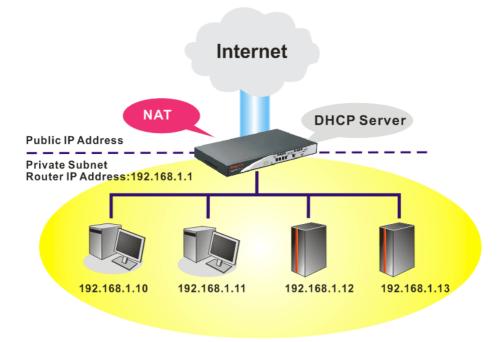
5.2 LAN

Local Area Network (LAN) is a group of subnets regulated and ruled by router. The design of network structure is related to what type of public IP addresses coming from your ISP.



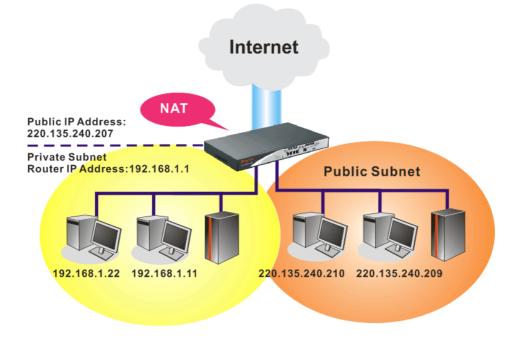
5.2.1 Basics of LAN

The most generic function of Vigor router is NAT. It creates a private subnet of your own. As mentioned previously, the router will talk to other public hosts on the Internet by using public IP address and talking to local hosts by using its private IP address. What NAT does is to translate the packets from public IP address to private IP address to forward the right packets to the right host and vice versa. Besides, Vigor router has a built-in DHCP server that assigns private IP address to each local host. See the following diagram for a briefly understanding.



In some special case, you may have a public IP subnet from your ISP such as 220.135.240.0/24. This means that you can set up a public subnet or call second subnet that each host is equipped with a public IP address. As a part of the public subnet, the Vigor router will serve for IP routing to help hosts in the public subnet to communicate with other public hosts or servers outside. Therefore, the router should be set as the gateway for public hosts.





What is Routing Information Protocol (RIP)

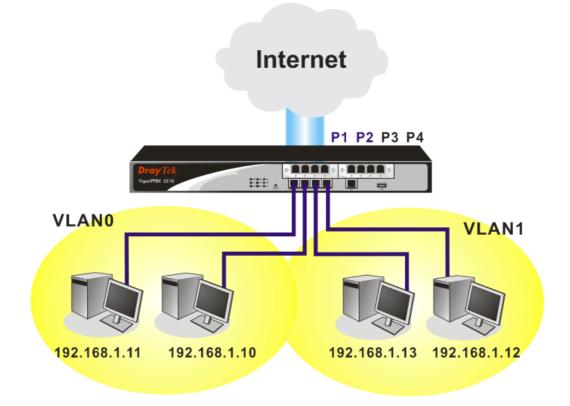
Vigor router will exchange routing information with neighboring routers using the RIP to accomplish IP routing. This allows users to change the information of the router such as IP address and the routers will automatically inform for each other.

What is Static Route

When you have several subnets in your LAN, sometimes a more effective and quicker way for connection is the **Static routes** function rather than other method. You may simply set rules to forward data from one specified subnet to another specified subnet without the presence of RIP.

What are Virtual LANs

You can group local hosts by physical ports and create up to 4 virtual LANs. To manage the communication between different groups, please set up rules in Virtual LAN (VLAN) function and the rate of each.



5.2.2 General Setup

This page provides you the general settings for LAN.

Click LAN to open the LAN settings page and choose General Setup.

LAN >> General Setup	LAI	N >>	General	l Setup
----------------------	-----	------	---------	---------

Ethernet TCP / IP and I	лсе зеще				
LAN IP Network Config	uration	DHCP Server Configura	DHCP Server Configuration		
The xxx.xxx.xxx.249 h	ad been used by VoIP	● Enable Server ○ Disat	● Enable Server ○ Disable Server		
module.		Relay Agent: 0 1st Subr	Relay Agent: 1st Subnet 2nd Subnet		
For NAT Usage		Start IP Address	192,168,1,10		
1st IP Address	192.168.1.1	Start IP Address	192.100.1.10		
1st Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	IP Pool Counts	50		
For IP Routing Usage 🔘	Enable 💿 Disable	Gateway IP Address	192.168.1.1		
2nd IP Address	192.168.2.1	DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent			
2nd Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0				
<u> </u>	nd Subnet DHCP Server	DNS Server IP Address			
		🚽 🔲 Force DNS manual se	tting		
RIP Protocol Control	Disable 🗸	Primary IP Address			
		Secondary IP Address			

1st IP Address	Type in private IP address for connecting to a local private network (Default: 192.168.1.1).
1st Subnet Mask	Type in an address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/24)



For IP Routing Usage	Click Enable to invoke this function. The default setting is Disable .
2 nd IP Address	Type in secondary IP address for connecting to a subnet. (Default: 192.168.2.1/24)
2 nd Subnet Mask	An address code that determines the size of the network. (Default: 255.255.255.0/ 24)
2 nd DHCP Server	You can configure the router to serve as a DHCP server for the 2 subnet.

DHCP Serve				
Start IP Addre				
IP Pool Count	s O	(max. 1	0)	
Index	Matched MAC A	ddress	given IP Add	ress
MAC Address		: : : : Edit	Cancel)
	ОК	Clear All	Close	

2nd

Start IP Address: Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the starting IP address must be 220.135.240.2 or greater, but smaller than 220.135.240.254.

IP Pool Counts: Enter the number of IP addresses in the pool. The maximum is 10. For example, if you type 3 and the 2nd IP address of your router is 220.135.240.1, the range of IP address by the DHCP server will be from 220.135.240.2 to 220.135.240.11.

MAC Address: Enter the MAC Address of the host one by one and click **Add** to create a list of hosts to be assigned, deleted or edited IP address from above pool. Set a list of MAC Address for 2^{nd} DHCP server will help router to assign the correct IP address of the correct subnet to the correct host. So those hosts in 2^{nd} subnet won't get an IP address belonging to 1^{st} subnet.

RIP Protocol Control

Disable deactivates the RIP protocol. It will lead to a stoppage of the exchange of routing information between routers. (Default)

RIP Protocol Control

Disable	*
Disable	
1st Subnet	
2nd Subnet	

1st Subnet - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 1st subnet with neighboring routers.

	2nd Subnet - Select the router to change the RIP information of the 2nd subnet with neighboring routers.
DHCP Server Configuration	DHCP stands for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The router by factory default acts a DHCP server for your network so it automatically dispatch related IP settings to any local user configured as a DHCP client. It is highly recommended that you leave the router enabled as a DHCP server if you do not have a DHCP server for your network.
	If you want to use another DHCP server in the network other than the Vigor Router's, you can let Relay Agent help you to redirect the DHCP request to the specified location. Enable Server - Let the router assign IP address to every host in the LAN.
	 Disable Server – Let you manually assign IP address to every host in the LAN. Relay Agent – (1st subnet/2nd subnet) Specify which subnet that DHCP server is located the relay agent should redirect the DHCP
	request to. Start IP Address - Enter a value of the IP address pool for the DHCP server to start with when issuing IP addresses. If the 1st IP address of your router is 192.168.1.1, the starting IP address must be 192.168.1.2 or greater, but smaller than 192.168.1.254. IP Pool Counts - Enter the maximum number of PCs that you want the DHCP server to assign IP addresses to. The default is 50 and the maximum is 253. Gateway IP Address - Enter a value of the gateway IP address for the DHCP server. The value is usually as same as the 1st IP address of the router, which means the router is the default gateway. DHCP Server IP Address for Relay Agent - Set the IP address of the DHCP server you are going to use so the Relay Agent can help to forward the DHCP request to the DHCP server.
DNS Server Configuration	DNS stands for Domain Name System. Every Internet host must have a unique IP address, also they may have a human-friendly, easy to remember name such as www.yahoo.com. The DNS server converts the user-friendly name into its equivalent IP address.
	 Force DNS manual setting - Force Vigor router to use DNS servers in this page instead of DNS servers given by the Internet Access server (PPPoE, PPTP, L2TP or DHCP server). Primary IP Address - You must specify a DNS server IP address here because your ISP should provide you with usually more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default DNS Server IP address: 194.109.6.66 to this field. Secondary IP Address - You can specify secondary DNS server IP address here because your ISP often provides you more than one DNS Server. If your ISP does not provide it, the router will automatically apply default secondary DNS server IP address: 194.98.0.1 to this field.

The default DNS Server IP address can be found via Online Status:



System Status			System Uptime: 2:10:17
LAN Status	Primary	DNS: 194.109.6.66	Secondary DNS: 168.95.1.1
IP Address	TX Packets	RX Packets	
192.168.1.1	7508	175019	

If both the Primary IP and Secondary IP Address fields are left empty, the router will assign its own IP address to local users as a DNS proxy server and maintain a DNS cache.

If the IP address of a domain name is already in the DNS cache, the router will resolve the domain name immediately. Otherwise, the router forwards the DNS query packet to the external DNS server by establishing a WAN (e.g. DSL/Cable) connection.

There are two common scenarios of LAN settings that stated in Chapter 4. For the configuration examples, please refer to that chapter to get more information for your necessity.

5.2.3 Static Route

Go to LAN to open setting page and choose Static Route.

LAN >> Static Route Setup

Static Route Configuration			Set	to Factory Default View Re	outing Table
Index	Destination Address	Status	Index	Destination Address	Status
<u>1.</u>	???	?	<u>6.</u>	???	?
<u>2.</u>	???	?	<u>7.</u>	???	?
<u>3.</u>	???	?	<u>8.</u>	???	?
<u>4.</u>	???	?	<u>9.</u>	???	?
<u>5.</u>	???	?	<u>10.</u>	???	?

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive, ? --- Empty

Index	The number (1 to 10) under Index allows you to open next page to set up static route.
Destination Address	Displays the destination address of the static route.

Status Displays the status of the static route.

Viewing Routing Table Displays the routing table for your reference.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

Key: C	C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ -	private	-
*	0.0.0.0/ 0.0.0.0 via 172.16.3.4,	UAN2	
2~	192.168.1.0/ 255.255.255.0 is directly connec	ted, LAN	
C	172.16.0.0/ 255.255.0.0 is directly connec	ted, WAN2	

Add Static Routes to Private and Public Networks

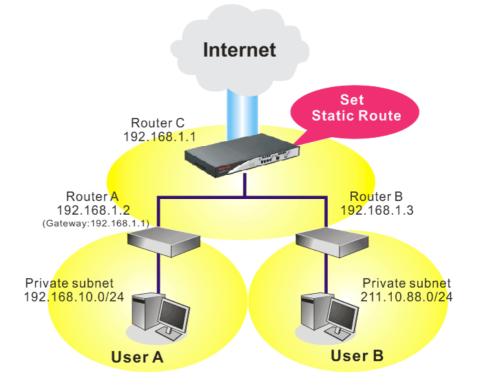
Here is an example of setting Static Route in Main Router so that user A and B locating in different subnet can talk to each other via the router. Assuming the Internet access has been configured and the router works properly:

• use the Main Router to surf the Internet.



- create a private subnet 192.168.10.0 using an internal Router A (192.168.1.2)
- create a public subnet 211.100.88.0 via an internal Router B (192.168.1.3).
- have set Main Router 192.168.1.1 as the default gateway for the Router A 192.168.1.2.

Before setting Static Route, user A cannot talk to user B for Router A can only forward recognized packets to its default gateway Main Router.



1. Go to LAN page and click General Setup, select 1st Subnet as the RIP Protocol Control. Then click the OK button.

Note: There are two reasons that we have to apply RIP Protocol Control on 1st Subnet. The first is that the LAN interface can exchange RIP packets with the neighboring routers via the 1st subnet (192.168.1.0/24). The second is that those hosts on the internal private subnets (ex. 192.168.10.0/24) can access the Internet via the router, and continuously exchange of IP routing information with different subnets.

2. Click the LAN - Static Route and click on the Index Number 1. Check the Enable box. Please add a static route as shown below, which regulates all packets destined to 192.168.10.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.2. Click OK.

Enable			
	Destination IP Address	192.168.10.0	
	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	
	Gateway IP Address	192.168.1.2	
	Network Interface	LAN 🔽	

LAN >> Static Route Setup



3. Return to **Static Route Setup** page. Click on another **Index Number** to add another static route as show below, which regulates all packets destined to 211.100.88.0 will be forwarded to 192.168.1.3.

AN >> Static Route Setup				
Index No. 2				
🗹 Enable				
	Destination IP Address		211.100.88.0]
	Subnet Mask		255.255.255.0]
	Gateway IP Address		192.168.1.3]
	Network Interface		LAN 🔽	

4. Go to **Diagnostics** and choose **Routing Table** to verify current routing table.

Diagnostics >> View Routing Table

	- connected, 5 -	static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private	1
5~ ⁻	192.168.10.0/	255.255.255.0 via 192.168.1.2, LAN	
~	192.168.1.0/	255.255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN	
~	211.100.88.0/	255.255.255.0 via 192.168.1.3, LAN	

5.2.4 VLAN

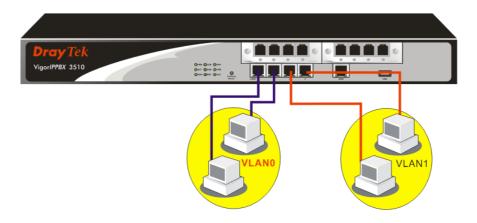
Virtual LAN function provides you a very convenient way to manage hosts by grouping them based on the physical port. You can also manage the in/out rate of each port. Go to **LAN** page and select **VLAN**. The following page will appear. Click **Enable** to invoke VLAN function.

nable				
	P1	P2	P3	P4
VLANO				
VLAN1				
VLAN2				
VLAN3				

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

To add or remove a VLAN, please refer to the following example.

1. If, VLAN 0 is consisted of hosts linked to P1 and P2 and VLAN 1 is consisted of hosts linked to P3 and P4.



2. After checking the box to enable VLAN function, you will check the table according to the needs as shown below.

Z Enable				
	P1	P2	P3	P4
VLANO				
VLAN1				
VLAN2				
VLAN3				

To remove VLAN, uncheck the needed box and click **OK** to save the results.

LAN >> VLAN Configuration

5.2.5 Bind IP to MAC

This function is used to bind the IP and MAC address in LAN to have a strengthening control in network. When this function is enabled, all the assigned IP and MAC address binding together cannot be changed. If you modified the binding IP or MAC address, it might cause you not access into the Internet.

Click \boldsymbol{LAN} and click \boldsymbol{Bind} \boldsymbol{IP} to \boldsymbol{MAC} to open the setup page.

LAN >> Bind IP to MAC

Sort

Enable	Click this radio button to invoke this function. However, IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List also can connect to Internet.
Disable	Click this radio button to disable this function. All the settings on this page will be invalid.
Strict Bind	Click this radio button to block the connection of the IP/MAC which is not listed in IP Bind List.
ARP Table	This table is the LAN ARP table of this router. The information for IP and MAC will be displayed in this field. Each pair of IP and MAC address listed in ARP table can be selected and added to IP Bind List by clicking Add below.
Add and Edit	 IP Address – Type the IP address that will be used for the specified MAC address. Mac Address – Type the MAC address that is used to bind with the assigned IP address.
Refresh	It is used to refresh the ARP table. When there is one new PC added to the LAN, you can click this link to obtain the newly ARP table information.
IP Bind List	It displays a list for the IP bind to MAC information.

Add	It allows you to add the one you choose from the ARP table or the IP/MAC address typed in Add and Edit to the table of IP Bind List .
Edit	It allows you to edit and modify the selected IP address and MAC address that you create before.
Remove	You can remove any item listed in IP Bind List . Simply click and select the one, and click Remove . The selected item will be removed from the IP Bind List .
	select Strict Bind , you have to bind one set of IP/MAC address for one of the PCs can access into Internet. And the web configurator of the

5.3 NAT

Usually, the router serves as an NAT (Network Address Translation) router. NAT is a mechanism that one or more private IP addresses can be mapped into a single public one. Public IP address is usually assigned by your ISP, for which you may get charged. Private IP addresses are recognized only among internal hosts.

When the outgoing packets destined to some public server on the Internet reach the NAT router, the router will change its source address into the public IP address of the router, select the available public port, and then forward it. At the same time, the router shall list an entry in a table to memorize this address/port-mapping relationship. When the public server response, the incoming traffic, of course, is destined to the router's public IP address and the router will do the inversion based on its table. Therefore, the internal host can communicate with external host smoothly.

The benefit of the NAT includes:

router might not be accessed.

- Save cost on applying public IP address and apply efficient usage of IP address. NAT allows the internal IP addresses of local hosts to be translated into one public IP address, thus you can have only one IP address on behalf of the entire internal hosts.
- Enhance security of the internal network by obscuring the IP address. There are many attacks aiming victims based on the IP address. Since the attacker cannot be aware of any private IP addresses, the NAT function can protect the internal network.

On NAT page, you will see the private IP address defined in RFC-1918. Usually we use the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet for the router. As stated before, the NAT facility can map one or more IP addresses and/or service ports into different specified services. In other words, the NAT function can be achieved by using port mapping methods.

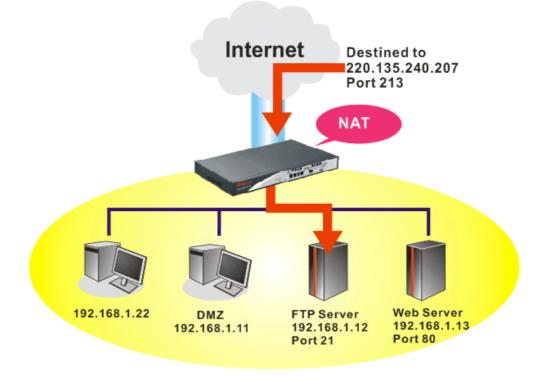
Below shows the menu items for NAT.



5.3.1 Port Redirection

Port Redirection is usually set up for server related service inside the local network (LAN), such as web servers, FTP servers, E-mail servers etc. Most of the case, you need a public IP address for each server and this public IP address/domain name are recognized by all users. Since the server is actually located inside the LAN, the network well protected by NAT of the router, and identified by its private IP address/port, the goal of Port Redirection function





is to forward all access request with public IP address from external users to the mapping private IP address/port of the server.

The port redirection can only apply to incoming traffic.

To use this function, please go to **NAT** page and choose **Port Redirection** web page. The **Port Redirection Table** provides 20 port-mapping entries for the internal hosts.

(ndex	Service Name	Public Port	Private IP	Status
<u>1.</u>				х
<u>2.</u>				x
<u>3.</u>				х
<u>4.</u>				x
<u>5.</u>				х
<u>6.</u>				×
<u>7.</u>				х
<u>8.</u>				х
<u>9.</u>				x
<u>10.</u>				×

NAT >> Port Redirection	NAT >>	Port	Redi	irection
-------------------------	--------	------	------	----------

Press any number under Index to access into next page for configuring port redirection.

NAT >> Port Redirection

Index No. 1	
🗹 Enable	
Mode	Range 💌
Service Name	Single Range
Protocol	💙
WAN IP	1.All
Public Port	0
Private IP	
Private Port	0

 ${\bf Note:}$ In "Range" Mode the End IP will be calculated automatically once the Public Port and Start IP have been entered.

OK	Clear	Cancel
----	-------	--------

Enable	Check this box to enable such port redirection setting.
Mode	Two options (Single and Range) are provided here for you to choose. To set a range for the specific service, select Range . In Range mode, if the public port (start port and end port) and the starting IP of private IP had been entered, the system will calculate and display the ending IP of private IP automatically.
Service Name	Enter the description of the specific network service.
Protocol	Select the transport layer protocol (TCP or UDP).
WAN IP	Select the WAN IP used for port redirection. There are eight WAN IP alias that can be selected and used for port redirection. The default setting is All which means all the incoming data from any port will be redirected to specified range of IP address and port.
Public Port	Specify which port can be redirected to the specified Private IP and Port of the internal host. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Simply type the required number on the first box. The second one will be assigned automatically later.
Private IP	Specify the private IP address of the internal host providing the service. If you choose Range as the port redirection mode, you will see two boxes on this field. Type a complete IP address in the first box (as the starting point) and the fourth digits in the second box (as the end point).
Private Port	Specify the private port number of the service offered by the internal host.
Active	Check this box to activate the port-mapping entry you have defined.

Note that the router has its own built-in services (servers) such as Telnet, HTTP and FTP etc. Since the common port numbers of these services (servers) are all the same, you may need to reset the router in order to avoid confliction.

For example, the built-in web configurator in the router is with default port 80, which may conflict with the web server in the local network, http://192.168.1.13:80. Therefore, you need to **change the router's http port to any one other than the default port 80** to avoid

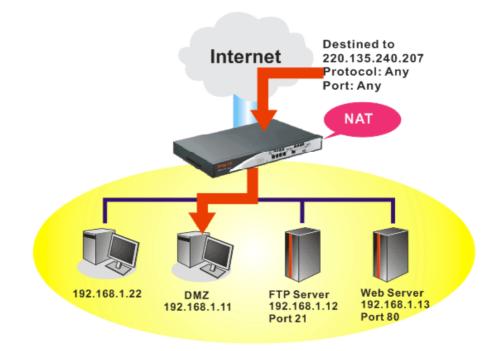


conflict, such as 8080. This can be set in the **System Maintenance** >>**Management.** You then will access the admin screen of by suffixing the IP address with 8080, e.g., http://192.168.1.1:8080 instead of port 80.

ntrol	Management Port Set	un	
	 User Define Ports Default Ports 		
	Telnet Port	23 (Default: 23)	
✓ HTTPS Server ✓ Telnet Server		80 (Default: 80)	
		443 (Default: 443)	
		21 (Default: 21)	
		22 (Default: 22)	
	SNMP Setup		
Subnet Mask	📃 Enable SNMP Agent		
~	Get Community	public	
~	Set Community	private	
~	Manager Host IP		
	Trap Community	public	
	Notification Host IP		
	Trap Timeout	10 seconds	
	Subnet Mask	m the Internet Item of the Ports Telnet Port HTTP Port HTTPS Port FTP Port Subnet Mask SNMP Setup Index of Community Get Community Set Community Trap Community Notification Host IP Trap Community	

5.3.2 DMZ Host

As mentioned above, **Port Redirection** can redirect incoming TCP/UDP or other traffic on particular ports to the specific private IP address/port of host in the LAN. However, other IP protocols, for example Protocols 50 (ESP) and 51 (AH), do not travel on a fixed port. Vigor router provides a facility **DMZ Host** that maps ALL unsolicited data on any protocol to a single host in the LAN. Regular web surfing and other such Internet activities from other clients will continue to work without inappropriate interruption. **DMZ Host** allows a defined internal user to be totally exposed to the Internet, which usually helps some special applications such as Netmeeting or Internet Games etc.



The inherent security properties of NAT are somewhat bypassed if you set up DMZ host. We suggest you to add additional filter rules or a secondary firewall.

Click **DMZ Host** to open the following page:

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

/AN 1	
None 🗸	
Private IP	Choose PC
MAC Address of the True I	
Note: When a True-IP DMZ be always on.	IP DMZ Host 00
Note: When a True-IP DMZ	

If you previously have set up **WAN Alias** for **PPPoE** or **Static or Dynamic IP** mode, you will find them in **Aux. WAN IP** for your selection.



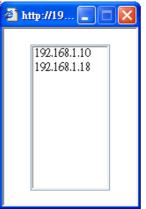
NAT >> DMZ Host Setup

VAN 1				
Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Private IP	
1.		192.168.5.20		Choose PC
2.		192.168.1.25		Choose PC

Enable Check to enable the DMZ Host function.

Private IP Enter the private IP address of the DMZ host, or click Choose PC to select one.

Choose PC Click this button and then a window will automatically pop up, as depicted below. The window consists of a list of private IP addresses of all hosts in your LAN network. Select one private IP address in the list to be the DMZ host.



When you have selected one private IP from the above dialog, the IP address will be shown on the following screen. Click **OK** to save the setting.

NAT >> DMZ Host Setup							
MZ Host	Setup						
WAN 1 Index	Enable	Aux. WAN IP	Private IP				
1.		192.168.5.20	192.168.1.249	Choose PC			
2.		192.168.1.25		Choose PC			

5.3.3 Open Ports

Open Ports allows you to open a range of ports for the traffic of special applications. Common application of Open Ports includes P2P application (e.g., BT, KaZaA, Gnutella, WinMX, eMule and others), Internet Camera etc. Ensure that you keep the application involved up-to-date to avoid falling victim to any security exploits.

Click **Open Ports** to open the following page:



NAT >> Open Ports

pen Ports Se	tup		Set to Fa	ictory Defaul
Index	Comment	WAN Interface	Local IP Address	Status
<u>1.</u>				×
<u>2.</u>				x
<u>3.</u>				х
<u>4.</u>				×
<u>5.</u>				х
<u>6.</u>				×
<u>7.</u>				х
<u>8.</u>				x
<u>9.</u>				х
<u>10.</u>				x
<u>1-10 11-20</u>	>>			Next

Index	Indicate the relative number for the particular entry that you want to offer service in a local host. You should click the appropriate index number to edit or clear the corresponding entry.
Comment	Specify the name for the defined network service.
WAN Interface	Display the WAN interface for the entry.
Local IP Address Display the private IP address of the local host offering the s	
Status	Display the state for the corresponding entry. X or V is to represent the Inactive or Active state.

To add or edit port settings, click one index number on the page. The index entry setup page will pop up. In each index entry, you can specify **10** port ranges for diverse services.

NAT >> Open Ports >> Edit Open Ports

🖌 E	nable Open P	orts					
Comment		P2F	P2P				
	W	AN Interface	VVA	WAN1 💌			
Local Computer 192.168.1.10 Choose PC							
	Protocol	Start Port	End Port		Protocol	Start Port	End Port
1.	TCP 🔽	4500	4700	6.	💙	0	0
2.	TCP 🔽	4500	4700	7.	💌	0	0
з.	💙	0	0	8.	💙	0	0
4.	💙	0	0	9.	💙	0	0
5.	🗸	0	0	10.	💙	0	0

Enable Open Ports Comment WAN Interface

Make a name for the defined network application/service. Specify the WAN interface that will be used for this entry.



Check to enable this entry.

Local Computer	Enter the private IP address of the local host or click Choose PC to select one.
Choose PC	Click this button and, subsequently, a window having a list of private IP addresses of local hosts will automatically pop up. Select the appropriate IP address of the local host in the list.
Protocol	Specify the transport layer protocol. It could be TCP , UDP , or (none) for selection.
Start Port	Specify the starting port number of the service offered by the local host.
End Port	Specify the ending port number of the service offered by the local host.

5.4 Firewall

5.4.1 Basics for Firewall

While the broadband users demand more bandwidth for multimedia, interactive applications, or distance learning, security has been always the most concerned. The firewall of the Vigor router helps to protect your local network against attack from unauthorized outsiders. It also restricts users in the local network from accessing the Internet. Furthermore, it can filter out specific packets that trigger the router to build an unwanted outgoing connection.

Firewall Facilities

The users on the LAN are provided with secured protection by the following firewall facilities:

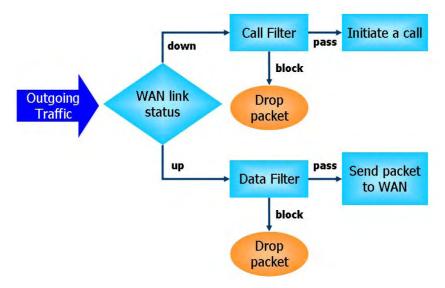
- User-configurable IP filter (Call Filter/ Data Filter).
- Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI): tracks packets and denies unsolicited incoming data
- Selectable Denial of Service (DoS) /Distributed DoS (DDoS) attacks protection

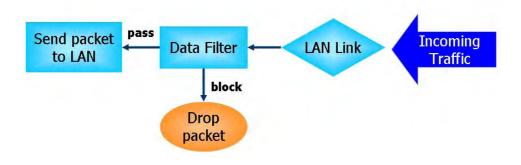
IP Filters

Depending on whether there is an existing Internet connection, or in other words "the WAN link status is up or down", the IP filter architecture categorizes traffic into two: **Call Filter** and **Data Filter**.

- **Call Filter** When there is no existing Internet connection, **Call Filter** is applied to all traffic, all of which should be outgoing. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass. Then the router shall **"initiate a call"** to build the Internet connection and send the packet to Internet.
- **Data Filter** When there is an existing Internet connection, **Data Filter** is applied to incoming and outgoing traffic. It will check packets according to the filter rules. If legal, the packet will pass the router.

The following illustrations are flow charts explaining how router will treat incoming traffic and outgoing traffic respectively.





Stateful Packet Inspection (SPI)

Stateful inspection is a firewall architecture that works at the network layer. Unlike legacy static packet filtering, which examines a packet based on the information in its header, stateful inspection builds up a state machine to track each connection traversing all interfaces of the firewall and makes sure they are valid. The stateful firewall of Vigor router not just examine the header information also monitor the state of the connection.

Denial of Service (DoS) Defense

The **DoS Defense** functionality helps you to detect and mitigate the DoS attack. The attacks are usually categorized into two types, the flooding-type attacks and the vulnerability attacks. The flooding-type attacks will attempt to exhaust all your system's resource while the vulnerability attacks will try to paralyze the system by offending the vulnerabilities of the protocol or operation system.

The **DoS Defense** function enables the Vigor router to inspect every incoming packet based on the attack signature database. Any malicious packet that might duplicate itself to paralyze the host in the secure LAN will be strictly blocked and a Syslog message will be sent as warning, if you set up Syslog server.

Also the Vigor router monitors the traffic. Any abnormal traffic flow violating the pre-defined parameter, such as the number of thresholds, is identified as an attack and the Vigor router will activate its defense mechanism to mitigate in a real-time manner.

The below shows the attack types that DoS/DDoS defense function can detect:

- 1. SYN flood attack
- 2. UDP flood attack
- 3. ICMP flood attack
- 4. Port Scan attack
- 5. IP options
- 6. Land attack
- 7. Smurf attack
- 8. Trace route

- 9. SYN fragment
- 10. Fraggle attack
- 11. TCP flag scan
- 12. Tear drop attack
- 13. Ping of Death attack
- 14. ICMP fragment
- 15. Unknown protocol

Below shows the menu items for Firewall.



5.4.2 General Setup

General Setup allows you to adjust settings of IP Filter and common options. Here you can enable or disable the **Call Filter** or **Data Filter**. Under some circumstance, your filter set can be linked to work in a serial manner. So here you assign the **Start Filter Set** only. Also you can configure the **Log Flag** settings, and **Accept large incoming fragmented UDP or ICMP packets**.

Click **Firewall** and click **General Setup** to open the general setup page.

Firewall >> General Setur	Firewa	>>	General	Setu	p
---------------------------	--------	----	---------	------	---

Call Filter	💿 Enable	Start Filter Se	t Set#1 💌
	🔘 Disable		
Data Filter	💿 Enable	Start Filter Se	t Set#2 💌
	🔘 Disable		
Actions for defa	ult rule:		
Application		Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter		Pass 💌	
IM/P2P Filter		None 💌	
URL Content Filte	Ľ	None 💌	
Web Content Filte	<u>u</u>	None 💌	
Advance Setting		Edit	

OK Cancel

Call Filter	Check Enable to activate the Call Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Call Filter.
Data Filter	Check Enable to activate the Data Filter function. Assign a start filter set for the Data Filter.
Action/Profile	Select Pass or Block for the packets that do not match with the filter rules.
IM/P2P Filter	Select one of the IM/P2P Filter Profile settings (created in CSM>> IM/P2P Filter) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> IM/P2P Filter Profile web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P Filter Profile by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5 Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.
URL Content Filter	Select one of the URL Content Filter Profile settings (created in CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter Profile web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for URL Content Filter by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5 Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.
Web Content Filter	Select one of the Web Content Filter Profile settings (created in CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile) for applying with this router.



Please set at least one profile for anti-virus in **CSM>> Web Content Filter Profile** web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for **Web Content Filter Profile** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5 **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

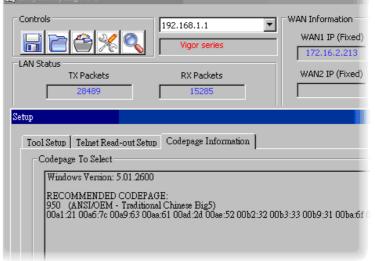
For troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM log here by checking the box. The log will be displayed on Draytek Syslog window.

Advance Setting Click Edit to open the following window. However, it is strongly recommended to use the default settings here.

	utm - Microsoft Internet Exp	plorer
irewall >> General Se	etup	
Advance Setting		
Codepage	ANSI(1253)-Gr	eek 🔽
Window size:	65535	
Session timeout:	1440	Minute
	OK Close	

Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage.

If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



Window size – It determines the size of TCP protocol (0~65535). The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Syslog

Session timeout–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

Some on-line games (for example: Half Life) will use lots of fragmented UDP packets to transfer game data. Instinctively as a secure firewall, Vigor router will reject these fragmented packets to prevent attack unless you enable "Accept Incoming Fragmented UDP Packets". By checking this box, you can play these kinds of on-line games. If security concern is in higher priority, you cannot enable "Accept Incoming Fragmented UDP Packets".

5.4.3 Filter Setup

Click Firewall and click Filter Setup to open the setup page.

Firewall >>	Filter	Setup
-------------	--------	-------

lter Se	etup		Set to Factory Defaul
Set	Comments	Set	Comments
<u>1.</u>	Default Call Filter	<u>7.</u>	
<u>2.</u>	Default Data Filter	<u>8.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>9.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>10.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>11.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>12.</u>	

To edit or add a filter, click on the set number to edit the individual set. The following page will be shown. Each filter set contains up to 7 rules. Click on the rule number button to edit each rule. Check **Active** to enable the rule.

Filter Set 1 Comments :	Default Call Filter					
Filter Rule	Active	C	omments	Move	Up N	love Down
1		Blo	ock NetBios			<u>Down</u>
2				<u>UP</u>		<u>Down</u>
3				<u>UP</u>		<u>Down</u>
4				<u>UP</u>		<u>Down</u>
5				<u>UP</u>		<u>Down</u>
6				<u>UP</u>		<u>Down</u>
7				<u>UP</u>		
				Next	Filter Se	et None 🚩
		ОК	Clear Car	ncel		
ilter Rule		button will	ton numbered open Edit Fil n, refer to the	lter Rule web	page.	
Active		Enable or c	lisable the filt	er rule.		
Comment		Enter filter 23–charact	set comment er long.	s/description	. Max	imum len
Move Up/D	own	Use Up or	Down link to	move the or	der of	the filter
Next Filter	Set		to the next fi Do not make a			

Firewall >> Filter Setup >> Edit Filter Set



To edit Filter Rule, click the Filter Rule index button to enter the Filter Rule setup page.

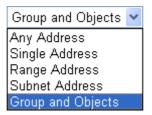
Firewall >> Edit Filter Set >> Edit Filter Rule

Check to enable the Filter Rule		
Comments:	Block NetBios	
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:	,,,	
Direction:	LAN -> WAN 🗸	
Source IP:	Any	Edit
Destination IP:	Any	Edit
Service Type:	TCP/UDP, Port: from 137~139 to undefined	Edit
Fragments:	Don't Care 🖌 🖌	
Application	Action/Profile	Syslog
Filter:	Block Immediately 🛛 👻	
Branch to Other Filter Set:	None 🔽	
IM/P2P_Filter:	None 🛩	
<u>URL Content Filter</u>	None 🗠	
Web Content Filter	None 💌	

Check to enable the Filter Rule	Check this box to enable the filter rule.
Comments	Enter filter set comments/description. Maximum length is 14- character long.
Index(1-15)	Set PCs on LAN to work at certain time interval only. You may choose up to 4 schedules out of the 15 schedules pre-defined in Applications >> Schedule setup. The default setting of this filed is blank and the function will always work.
Direction	Set the direction of packet flow (LAN->WAN/WAN->LAN). It is for Data Filter only. For the Call Filter , this setting is not available since Call Filter is only applied to outgoing traffic.
Source/Destination IP	Click Edit to access into the following dialog to choose the source/destination IP or IP ranges.

art IP Address O.O.O. d IP Address O.O.O. ert Mask O.O.O. ert Selection Occurs
d IP Address 0.0.0.0 onet Mask 0.0.0.0 onet Mask 0.0.0.0 onet Mask 0.0.0.0 onet Selection
onet Mask 0.0.0
ert Selection
No.
Group None 🛩
IP Object None 🛩
IP Object None
IP Object 1-RD Department 2-Finanical Dept.
3-HR Department

To set the IP address manually, please choose **Any Address/Single Address/Range Address/Subnet Address** as the Address Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you want to use the IP range from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Address Type.



From the **IP Group** drop down list, choose the one that you want to apply. Or use the **IP Object** drop down list to choose the object that you want.

Click **Edit** to access into the following dialog to choose a suitable service type.

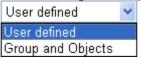
Service Type	Group and Objects 💌
Protocol	
Source Port	= 🗸 137 ~ 139
Destination Port	= 🗸 1 ~ 65535
<u>Service Group</u>	None 💌
or <u>Service Object</u>	None 💌
or Service Object	None 💌
or Service Object	None 1-SIP
ОК	2-RTP

To set the service type manually, please choose **User defined** as the Service Type and type them in this dialog. In addition, if you

Service Type



want to use the service type from defined groups or objects, please choose **Group and Objects** as the Service Type.



Protocol - Specify the protocol(s) which this filter rule will apply to. Source/Destination Port -(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this service type. (!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type. (>) – the port number greater than this value is available. (<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile. Service Group/Object - Use the drop down list to choose the one that you want. **Fragments** Specify the action for fragmented packets. And it is used for Data Filter only. Don't care - No action will be taken towards fragmented packets. Unfragmented - Apply the rule to unfragmented packets. *Fragmented* - Apply the rule to fragmented packets. *Too Short* - Apply the rule only to packets that are too short to contain a complete header. Filter Specifies the action to be taken when packets match the rule. Block Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be dropped immediately. Pass Immediately - Packets matching the rule will be passed immediately. Block If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be dropped. Pass If No Further Match - A packet matching the rule, and that does not match further rules, will be passed through. **Branch to other Filter** If the packet matches the filter rule, the next filter rule will branch Set to the specified filter set. Select next filter rule to branch from the drop-down menu. Be aware that the router will apply the specified filter rule for ever and will not return to previous filter rule any more. **IM/P2P** Filter Select one of the IM/P2P Filter Profile settings (created in **CSM>> IM/P2P Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> IM/P2P Filter Profile web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to record information for IM/P2P Filter Profile by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5 Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information. **URL Content Filter** Select one of the **URL Content Filter** profile settings (created in **CSM>> URL Content Filter**) for applying with this router. Please set at least one profile for choosing in CSM>> URL Content Filter web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to

record information for **URL Content Filter** by checking the Log box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5 **Syslog/Mail Alert** for more detailed information.

Web Content FilterSelect one of the Web Content Filter profile settings (created in
CSM>> Web Content Filter) for applying with this router. Please
set at least one profile for anti-virus in CSM>> Web Content
Filter web page first. For troubleshooting needs, you can specify to
record information for Web Content Filter by checking the Log
box. It will be sent to Syslog server. Please refer to section 5.14.5
Syslog/Mail Alert for more detailed information.

SysLogFor troubleshooting needs you can specify the filter log and/or CSM
log here. Check the corresponding box to enable the log function.
Then, the filter log and/or CSM log will be shown on Draytek
Syslog window.

Advance Setting Click Edit to open the following window. However, it is strongly recommended to use the default settings here.

Advance Setting			
Codepage	ANSI(1253)-Greek		*
Window size:	65535		
Session timeout:	1440	Minute	
ſ	OK Close	1	

Codepage - This function is used to compare the characters among different languages. Choose correct codepage can help the system obtaining correct ASCII after decoding data from URL and enhance the correctness of URL Content Filter. The default value for this setting is ANSI 1252 Latin I. If you do not choose any codepage, no decoding job of URL will be processed. Please use the drop-down list to choose a codepage. If you do not have any idea of choosing suitable codepage, please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog,

please open Syslog. From Codepage Information of Setup dialog, you will see the recommended codepage listed on the dialog box.



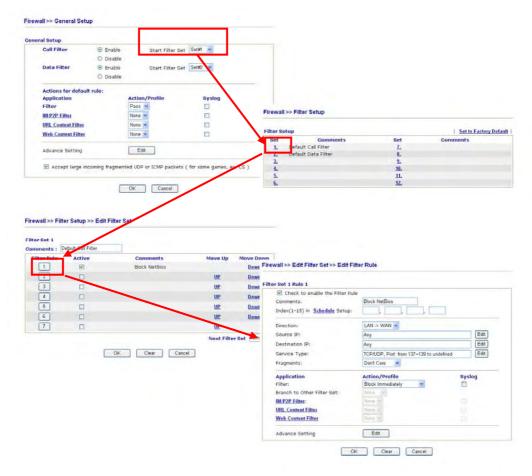
📶 DrayTek Syslog 3.9.1		
Controls	192.168.1.1 Vigor series	WAN Information WAN1 IP (Fixed)
TX Packets	RX Packets	WAN2 IP (Fixed)
28489	15285	
Setup		
Tool Setup Telnet Read-out Setup Codepage To Select	Codepage Information	_
Windows Version: 5.01.2600 RECOMMENDED CODEPA 950 (ANSI/OEM - Tradition 00a1:21 00a6:7c 00a9:63 00a		0b3:33 00b9:31 00ba:6f (

Window size – It determines the size of TCP protocol $(0 \sim 65535)$. The more the value is, the better the performance will be. However, if the network is not stable, small value will be proper.

Session timeout–Setting timeout for sessions can make the best utilization of network resources. However, Queue timeout is configured for TCP protocol only; session timeout is configured for the data flow which matched with the firewall rule.

Example

As stated before, all the traffic will be separated and arbitrated using on of two IP filters: call filter or data filter. You may preset 12 call filters and data filters in **Filter Setup** and even link them in a serial manner. Each filter set is composed by 7 filter rules, which can be further defined. After that, in **General Setup** you may specify one set for call filter and one set for data filter to execute first.





5.4.4 DoS Defense

As a sub-functionality of IP Filter/Firewall, there are 15 types of detect/ defense function in the **DoS Defense** setup. The DoS Defense functionality is disabled for default.

Click Firewall and click **DoS Defense** to open the setup page.

Enable DoS Defense				
Enable SYN flood defense	Threshold	50	packets / sec	
	Timeout	10	sec	
Enable UDP flood defense	Threshold	150	packets / sec	
	Timeout	10	sec	
Enable ICMP flood defense	Threshold	50	packets / sec	
	Timeout	10	sec	
Enable Port Scan detection	Threshold	150	packets / sec	
Block IP options	📃 Block TCP fla	g scan		
🔲 Block Land	📃 Block Tear Dr	📃 Block Tear Drop		
🔲 Block Smurf	📃 Block Ping of	🔲 Block Ping of Death		
🔲 Block trace route	📃 Block ICMP fr	agment		
📃 Block SYN fragment	📃 Block Unknow	vnProtocol		
🔲 Block Fraggle Attack				
Rushla Deff defense forestier		hh		
Enable DoS defense function crackers.	to prevent the attacks	llom nack		

Enable Dos Defense	Check the box to activate the DoS Defense Functionality.
Enable SYN flood defense	Check the box to activate the SYN flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the TCP SYN packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent TCP SYN packets for a period defined in Timeout. The goal for this is prevent the TCP SYN packets' attempt to exhaust the limited-resource of Vigor router. By default, the threshold and timeout values are set to 50 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable UDP flood defense	Check the box to activate the UDP flood defense function. Once detecting the Threshold of the UDP packets from the Internet has exceeded the defined value, the Vigor router will start to randomly discard the subsequent UDP packets for a period defined in Timeout. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 150 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable ICMP flood defense	Check the box to activate the ICMP flood defense function. Similar to the UDP flood defense function, once if the Threshold of ICMP packets from Internet has exceeded the defined value, the router will discard the ICMP echo requests coming from the Internet. The default setting for threshold and timeout are 50 packets per second and 10 seconds, respectively.
Enable PortScan detection	Port Scan attacks the Vigor router by sending lots of packets to many ports in an attempt to find ignorant services would respond. Check the box to activate the Port Scan detection. Whenever

	detecting this malicious exploration behavior by monitoring the port-scanning Threshold rate, the Vigor router will send out a warning. By default, the Vigor router sets the threshold as 150 packets per second.
Block IP options	Check the box to activate the Block IP options function. The Vigor router will ignore any IP packets with IP option field in the datagram header. The reason for limitation is IP option appears to be a vulnerability of the security for the LAN because it will carry significant information, such as security, TCC (closed user group) parameters, a series of Internet addresses, routing messagesetc. An eavesdropper outside might learn the details of your private networks.
Block Land	Check the box to enforce the Vigor router to defense the Land attacks. The Land attack combines the SYN attack technology with IP spoofing. A Land attack occurs when an attacker sends spoofed SYN packets with the identical source and destination addresses, as well as the port number to victims.
Block Smurf	Check the box to activate the Block Smurf function. The Vigor router will ignore any broadcasting ICMP echo request.
Block trace router	Check the box to enforce the Vigor router not to forward any trace route packets.
Block SYN fragment	Check the box to activate the Block SYN fragment function. The Vigor router will drop any packets having SYN flag and more fragment bit set.
Block Fraggle Attack	Check the box to activate the Block fraggle Attack function. Any broadcast UDP packets received from the Internet is blocked. Activating the DoS/DDoS defense functionality might block some legal packets. For example, when you activate the fraggle attack defense, all broadcast UDP packets coming from the Internet are blocked. Therefore, the RIP packets from the Internet might be dropped.
Block TCP flag scan	Check the box to activate the Block TCP flag scan function. Any TCP packet with anomaly flag setting is dropped. Those scanning activities include <i>no flag scan</i> , <i>FIN without ACK scan</i> , <i>SYN FINscan</i> , <i>Xmas scan</i> and <i>full Xmas scan</i> .
Block Tear Drop	Check the box to activate the Block Tear Drop function. Many machines may crash when receiving ICMP datagrams (packets) that exceed the maximum length. To avoid this type of attack, the Vigor router is designed to be capable of discarding any fragmented ICMP packets with a length greater than 1024 octets.
Block Ping of Death	Check the box to activate the Block Ping of Death function. This attack involves the perpetrator sending overlapping packets to the target hosts so that those target hosts will hang once they re-construct the packets. The Vigor routers will block any packets realizing this attacking activity.
Block ICMP Fragment	Check the box to activate the Block ICMP fragment function. Any ICMP packets with more fragment bit set are dropped.
Block Unknown Protocol	Check the box to activate the Block Unknown Protocol function. Individual IP packet has a protocol field in the datagram header to



indicate the protocol type running over the upper layer. However, the protocol types greater than 100 are reserved and undefined at this time. Therefore, the router should have ability to detect and reject this kind of packets.

Warning Messages We provide Syslog function for user to retrieve message from Vigor router. The user, as a Syslog Server, shall receive the report sending from Vigor router which is a Syslog Client.

All the warning messages related to **DoS Defense** will be sent to user and user can review it through Syslog daemon. Look for the keyword **DoS** in the message, followed by a name to indicate what kind of attacks is detected.

System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup

ysLog / Mail Ale				
SysLog Access S	etup		Mail Alert Setup	Send a test e-mail
🗹 Enable	_		🗹 Enable	Send a test e-mail
Server IP Address	19	92.168.1.115	SMTP Server	
Destination Port 514		Mail To		
nable syslog mes	sage:		Return-Path	
Firewall Log			Authentication User Name	
VPN Log				
User Access	s Log		Password	
Call Log			Enable E-Mail Alert:	
WAN Log			DoS Attack	
Router/DSL	Informatio	n		
DrayTek Syslog 3.7.0				
iontrols	192.168		us iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe	ts TX Rate
iontrols				ts TX Rate
iontrols	RX	Packets	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172.16.3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe	3 ets RX Rate
iontrols	RX	pr2820 Series	TX Packe 172.16.3.4 343	3
AN Status TX Packets 4175	RX	Packets	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172.16.3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe	3 ets RX Rate 126
AN Status AN Status 4175 ineveal Log VPN Log U: Time	RX RX ser Access Log Host	r2820 Series Packets 3668 Call Log WAN Log Others Message	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172.16.3.4 943 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172.16.3.229 2588 Network Information Net State Traffic	Braph
AN Status TX Packets 4175 inewall Log VPN Log U:	RX RX mer Access Log	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172.16.3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172.16.3.229 2558	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375
AN Status TX Packets TX Packets Time Jan 1000042	RX RX ser Access Log Host Vigor	v2820 Series Packets Gall Log WAN Log Others Message DoS syn_flood Block(10) 197	iateway IP (Fixed) TX Packe 172:16-3.4 343 WAN IP (Fixed) RX Packe 172:16-3.229 2556 Network Information Net State Traffic 168:1.115,10605 -> 192:168:1.1,23 PR 6	3 RX Rate 126 Graph (top) len 20 40 - \$394375

5.5 Objects Settings

For IPs in a range and service ports in a limited range usually will be applied in configuring router's settings, therefore we can define them with *objects* and bind them with *groups* for using conveniently. Later, we can select that object/group that can apply it. For example, all the IPs in the same department can be defined with an IP object (a range of IP address).

Objects Setting
IP Object
▶ IP Group
Service Type Object
Service Type Group
Keyword Object
Keyword Group
File Extension Object
▶ IM Object
▶ P2P Object
Misc Object

Objects Setting >> IP Object

Objects Setting >> IP Object

5.5.1 IP Object

You can set up to 192 sets of IP Objects with different conditions.

Object Profiles	:		Set to Factory Default
Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Name:	RD Department
Interface:	Any 💌
Address Type:	Range Address 💌
Start IP Address:	192.168.1.64
End IP Address:	192.168.1.75
Subnet Mask:	0.0.0
Invert Selection:	

Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.		
Interface	Choose a proper interface (WAN, LAN or Any). Interface: Any Any LAN WAN For example, the Direction setting in Edit Filter Rule will ask you specify IP or IP range for WAN or LAN or any IP address. If you choose LAN as the Interface here, and choose LAN as the direction setting in Edit Filter Rule , then all the IP addresses specified with LAN interface will be opened for you to choose in Edit Filter Rule page.		
Address Type	 Determine the address type for the IP address. Select Single Address if this object contains one IP address only. Select Range Address if this object contains several IPs within a range. Select Subnet Address if this object contains one subnet fo IP address. Select Any Address if this object contains any IP address. 		
Start IP Address	Type the start IP address for Single Address type.		
End IP Address	Type the end IP address if the Range Address type is selected.		
Subnet Mask	Type the subnet mask if the Subnet Address type is selected.		
Invert Selection	If it is checked, all the IP addresses except the ones listed above will be applied later while it is chosen.		

Below is an example of IP objects settings.

Objects Setting >> IP Object

IP O	bject	Profi	les:
------	-------	-------	------

Index	Name
<u>1.</u>	RD Department
<u>2.</u>	Finanical Dept.
<u>3.</u>	HR Department
<u>4.</u>	
-	

Dray Tek

5.5.2 IP Group

This page allows you to bind several IP objects into one IP group.

Group Table:			Set to Factory Defau
Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Objects Setting >> IP Group

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

Objects Setting >> IP Group

Profile Index : 1		
Name:	Administration	
Interface:	Any 💌	
Available IP Objects	Selected IP Objects	
1-RD Department 2-Finanical Dept. 3-HR Department	» «	
	OK Clear Cancel	
Name	Type a name for this profile. Maximum 15 characters are allowed.	
Interface Choose WAN, LAN or Any to display all the availate objects with the specified interface.		
Available IP Objects	All the available IP objects with the specified interface chose above will be shown in this box.	
elected IP Objects Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box		



5.5.3 Service Type Object

You can set up to 96 sets of Service Type Objects with different conditions.

```
Objects Setting >> Service Type Object
```

Service Type Obj	ect Profiles:		Set to Factory Default
Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	
<< <u>1-32</u> <u>33-64</u> <u>6</u>	<u>5-96</u> >>		<u>Next</u> >>

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

		· · ·	
Profile Inde	x:1		
	Name	www	
	Protocol	TCP 6	
	Source Port	= 🗸 1 ~~ 65535	
	Destination Port	= 🔽 70 ~ 80	
		OK Clear Cancel	
Name		Type a name for this profile.	
Protocol		Specify the protocol(s) which this profile wil	l apply to.
		Any ICMP IGMP TCP UDP TCP/UDP Other	
Source/De	stination Port	Source Port and the Destination Port colum for TCP/UDP protocol. It can be ignored for The filter rule will filter out any port number.	other protocols.

Objects Setting >> Service Type Object Setup



(=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates one port; when the first and last values are different, it indicates a range for the port and available for this profile. (!=) – when the first and last value are the same, it indicates all the ports except the port defined here; when the first and last values are different, it indicates that all the ports except the range defined here are available for this service type.

(>) – the port number greater than this value is available.(<) – the port number less than this value is available for this profile.

Below is an example of service type objects settings.

Service Type Object Profiles:

Index	Name
<u>1.</u>	SIP
<u>2.</u>	RTP
<u>3.</u>	
<u>4.</u>	

5.5.4 Service Type Group

This page allows you to bind several service types into one group.

```
Objects Setting >> Service Type Group
```

ervice Type Gro	up Table:		Set to Factory Default
Group	Name	Group	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.



Objects Setting >> Service Type Group Setup

Name:	VoIP
Available Service Type	Objects Selected Service Type Objects
1-SIP 2-RTP	»» «
L	OK Clear Cancel
Name	Type a name for this profile.
Available Service Type Objects	All the available service objects that you have added on Objects Setting>>Service Type Object will be shown in this box.
Selected Service Type Objects	Click >> button to add the selected IP objects in this box.

5.5.5 Keyword Object

You can set 200 keyword object profiles for choosing as black /white list in CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.

Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Objects Setting >> Keyword Object

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.



Objects Setting >> K	eyword Object Setup
Profile Index : 1	
Name	
Contents	(Max 63 characters)
Name	OK Clear Cancel Type a name for this profile, e.g., game.
Contents	Type the content for such profile. For example, type <i>gambling</i> as Contents. When you browse the webpage, the page with gambling information will be watched out and be passed/blocked based on the configuration on Firewall settings.

5.5.6 Keyword Group

This page allows you to bind several keyword objects into one group. The keyword groups set here will be chosen as black /white list in CSM >>URL Web Content Filter Profile.

Keyword Grou	p Table:		Set to Factory Default
Index	Name	Index	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

```
Objects Setting >> Keyword Group
```

```
Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.
```

Click the number under Index column for setting in detail.



Objects Setting >> Keyword Group Setup

Name:	
Available Keyword Objects	Selected Keyword Objects(Max 16 Objects)
1-Keyword-1 2-keyword-2	» «
(OK Clear Cancel
Name	Type a name for this group.
Available Keyword Objects	You can gather keyword objects from Keyword Object page within one keyword group. All the available Keyword objects that you have created will be shown in this box.
Selected Keyword Objects	Click button to add the selected Keyword objects in this box.

5.5.7 File Extension Object

This page allows you to set eight profiles which will be applied in **CSM>>URL Content Filter**. All the files with the extension names specified in these profiles will be processed according to the chosen action.

Profile 1 with name of "default" is the default profile, some files with the file extensions specified in this profile will be ignored and not be scanned by Vigor router.

File Extension Ob	ject Profiles:		Set to Factory Defau	lt
Profile	Name	Profile	Name	
<u>1.</u>		<u>5.</u>		
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>		
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>		
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>		

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details.

Objects Setting >> File Extension Object Setup

Profile Index: 1		Profile	Name:				
Categories			F	ile Extensio	ons		
Image Select All Clear All	D.bmp	.dib .pcx	.gif	.jpeg .jpeg	.jpg .png	🗌 .jpg2 🔲 .tif	.jp2 .tiff
Video Select All Clear All	.asf .qt	□.avi □.rm	.mov .wmv	.mpe .3gp	.mpeg .3gpp	.mpg .3gpp2	.mp4
Audio Select All Clear All	.aac .ra	□.aiff □.ram	🗌 .au 🗌 .vox	.mp3 .wav	.m4a .wma	🗌 .m4p	🗆 .ogg
Java Select All Clear All	🗌 .class 🗋 .jse	□.jad □.jsp	□.jar □.jtk	🗆 .jav	🗌 .java	🗌 .jcm	🗆 .js
ActiveX Select All Clear All	🗆 .alx 🗋 .viv	.apb .vrm	.axs	.ocx	🗌 . olb	.ole	🗌 . tlb
Compression Select All Clear All	.ace	🗌 .arj 🗌 .sit	.bzip2	.bz2	🗌 .cab	🗆 .gz	🗆 . gzip
Executation Select All Clear All	.bas .scr	🗌 .bat	.com	.exe	.inf	🗌 .pif	.reg
		OK	Clear	Canc	el		

Profile Name

Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the items of file extension that will be processed in the router. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

5.5.8 IM Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for Instant Messenger. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

M Profile Table:			Set to Factory Default
Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. There are several types of Instant Messenger (IM) provided here for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **IM Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

Dray Tek

Objects Setting >> IM Object Profile

rofile Name:					
heck for Disallov	v:	Advanced	Management		
			YahooIM	111/ - 5 0	
Activity / Ap		MSN	YanooiM	AIM(<=5.9)	ICQ
Logir					
Messa	-				
File Tran					
Game	9				
Video)				
Voice	e				
Conference					
Other Activities					
		IM Application			VoIP
🗌 AIM6	□QQ	🗌 iChat	🗌 Jabb	er/GoogleTalk	
🗌 GoogleChat	🗌 XFire	📃 GaduGad	u 📃 Palta	alk	Skype
Qnext	🗌 Meetro	POCO/PP365 AresChat		SIP	
				I	
		/eb IM (* = mor	re than one addre	ss)	
	<u>eMessenger</u>	<u>WebMSN</u>	<u>meebo*</u>	<u>eBuddy</u>	<u>ILovelM*</u>
WebIM URLs	ICQ Java*	ICQ Flash*	goowy*	<u>IMhaha*</u>	<u>getMessenger</u>
	IMUnitive*	Wablet*	<u>mabber*</u>	<u>MSN2G0*</u>	<u>KoollM</u>
	MessengerFX*	MessengerAdio	<u>ctos WebYahoolM</u>		

Profile Name

Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the items that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

5.5.9 P2P Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for peer-to-peer application. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

P2P Profile Table:			Set to Factory Default
Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Objects Setting >> P2P Object Profile

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. There are several items for P2P protocols provided here for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **P2P Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

file Name:			
eck for Disallow:			
Protocol		Applications	
🗌 SoulSeek	SoulSeek		
🗌 eDonkey	eDonkey, eM	ule, Shareaza	
FastTrack	KazaA, BearS	hare, iMesh	
OpenFT 🗌	KCeasy, FileF	ipe	
🗌 Gnutella	BearShare, Li	mewire, Shareaza, Foxy	
🗌 OpenNap	Lopster, XNa	p, WinLop	
BitTorrent	BitTorrent, Bi	tSpirit, BitComet	
🔲 Winny	Winny, WinM	X, Share	
	Other P2	P Applications	
🗌 Xunlei	📃 Vagaa	PP365	POCO
Clubbox	Ares	ezPeer	

Objects Setting >> P2P Object Profile



Profile Name Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the protocols that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

5.5.10 Misc Object

This page allows you to set 32 profiles for miscellaneous applications. These profiles will be applied in **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** for filtering.

Misc Profil	e Table:		Set to Factory Default
Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

Objects Setting >> Misc Object Profile

Set to Factory Default

Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Profile column for configuration in details. Applications for tunneling and streaming are listed in the page for you to choose to disallow people using. Simple check the box (es) and then click **OK**. Later, in the **CSM>>IM/P2P Filter Profile** page, you can use **Misc Object** drop down list to choose the proper profile configured here as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

Objects Setting >> Misc Object Profile

Profile Index: 1				
Profile Name:				
Check for Disallow	e:			
		Tunneling		
Socks4/5	PGPNet	HTTP Proxy	TOR	VNN VNN
SoftEther	FolderShare	MS TEREDO	🗌 Wujie/UltraSurf	📃 Hamachi
HTTP Tunnel	🗌 Ping Tunnel	🔲 Tiny VPN		
-				
		Streaming		
MMS	RTSP	🗌 TVAnt:	5 🗖 F	PStream
🗌 PPlive	🗌 FeiDian	🗌 UUSee	1	NSPlayer
PCAST	🗌 TVKoo	🗌 SopCa	st 🔲 l	JDLiveX
TVUPlayer	MySee	🗌 Joost	F	FlashVideo
		Remote Control		
VNC	🗌 Radmin	🗌 SpyAn	ywhere 🔲 🤋	ShowMyPC
LogMeIn	🗌 TeamViewei	r 📃 Gogrok		RemoteControlPro
CrossLoop	🗌 WindowsRDI	P 🗌 pcAny	where	
	OK	Clear	Cancel	

Profile Name

Type a name for this profile.

Type a name for such profile and check all the protocols that not allowed to be used in the host. Finally, click **OK** to save this profile.

5.6 CSM

CSM is an abbreviation of **Content Security Management** which is used to control IM/P2P usage, filter the web content and URL content to reach a goal of security management.

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserve attitude in order to reduce employee misusage during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.

IM/P2P Filter

As the popularity of all kinds of instant messenger application arises, communication cannot become much easier. Nevertheless, while some industry may leverage this as a great tool to connect with their customers, some industry may take reserve attitude in order to reduce employee misusage during office hour or prevent unknown security leak. It is similar situation for corporation towards peer-to-peer applications since file-sharing can be convenient but insecure at the same time. To address these needs, we provide CSM functionality.



URL Content Filter

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

Web Content Filter

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g.www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.

Note: The priority of URL Content Filter is higher than Web Content Filter.



5.6.1 IM/P2P Filter Profile

You can define policy profiles for different policy of IM (Instant Messenger)/P2P (Peer to Peer) application. Such profile will be used in **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages.

IM/P2P Fi	lter Profile Table:		Set to Factory Default
Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>17.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>18.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>19.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>20.</u>	
<u>5.</u>		<u>21.</u>	
<u>6.</u>		<u>22.</u>	
<u>7.</u>		<u>23.</u>	
<u>8.</u>		<u>24.</u>	
<u>9.</u>		<u>25.</u>	
<u>10.</u>		<u>26.</u>	
<u>11.</u>		<u>27.</u>	
<u>12.</u>		<u>28.</u>	
<u>13.</u>		<u>29.</u>	
<u>14.</u>		<u>30.</u>	
<u>15.</u>		<u>31.</u>	
<u>16.</u>		<u>32.</u>	

CSM >> IM/P2P Filter Profile

Set to Factory Default Clear all profiles.

Click the number under Index column for settings in detail.

CSM >> IM/P2P Filter Profile

Profile Index:	1	_		
Profile Name:				
	IM Object		None 🛩	
	P2P Object		None 💌	
	<u>Misc Object</u>		None 💌	
		ОК	Cancel	

Profile Name

Type a name for the CSM profile.

Each profile can contain three objects settings, IM Object, P2P Object and Misc Object. Such profile can be applied in the **Firewall>>General Setup** and **Firewall>>Filter Setup** pages as the standard for the host(s) to follow.

5.6.2 URL Content Filter Profile

To provide an appropriate cyberspace to users, Vigor router equips with **URL Content Filter** not only to limit illegal traffic from/to the inappropriate web sites but also prohibit other web feature where malicious code may conceal.

Once a user type in or click on an URL with objectionable keywords, URL keyword blocking facility will decline the HTTP request to that web page thus can limit user's access to the website. You may imagine **URL Content Filter** as a well-trained convenience-store clerk who won't sell adult magazines to teenagers. At office, **URL Content Filter** can also provide a job-related only environment hence to increase the employee work efficiency. How can URL Content Filter work better than traditional firewall in the field of filtering? Because it checks the URL strings or some of HTTP data hiding in the payload of TCP packets while legacy firewall inspects packets based on the fields of TCP/IP headers only.

On the other hand, Vigor router can prevent user from accidentally downloading malicious codes from web pages. It's very common that malicious codes conceal in the executable objects, such as ActiveX, Java Applet, compressed files, and other executable files. Once downloading these types of files from websites, you may risk bringing threat to your system. For example, an ActiveX control object is usually used for providing interactive web feature. If malicious code hides inside, it may occupy user's system.

For example, if you add key words such as "sex", Vigor router will limit web access to web sites or web pages such as "www.sex.com", "www.backdoor.net/images/sex/p_386.html". Or you may simply specify the full or partial URL such as "www.sex.com" or "sex.com".

Also the Vigor router will discard any request that tries to retrieve the malicious code.

Click CSM and click URL Content Filter Profile to open the profile setting page.

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>5.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>	
ody> <center><}</center>		ters) =b page has been block administrator for fur	-

CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

You can set eight profiles as URL content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.

ΟK



CSM >> URL Content Filter Profile

Profile Name:		
Priority:	Both : Pass	✓ Log: None ✓
1.URL Acces	s Control	
🗌 Enab	le URL Access Control	Prevent web access from IP address
Actio	n:	Group/Object Selections
Pass	×	Edit
2.Web Feat	ıre	
Enab	le Restrict Web Feature	
Actio	n:	
Pass	Cookie Proxy	File Extension Profile: None 🛩
	ОК	Clear Cancel

Profile Name	Type the name for such profile.
Priority	It determines the action that this router will apply. Both: Pass – The router will let all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below passing through. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive. Both: Block – The router will block all the packages that match with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature below. When you choose this setting, both configuration set in this page for URL Access Control and Web Feature will be inactive. Either: URL Access Control First – When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for URL first, then Web feature second. Either: Web Feature First –When all the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages matching with the conditions specified in URL Access Control and Web Feature below, such function can determine the priority for the actions executed. For this one, the router will process the packages with the conditions set below for web feature first, then URL second.
	Both : Pass Both : Pass Both : Pass Both : Block
	Either : URL Access Control First Either : Web Feature First
Log	None – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.

None – There is no log file will be recorded for this profile.
Pass – Only the log about Pass will be recorded in Syslog.
Block – Only the log about Block will be recorded in Syslog.

Log

All – All the actions (Pass and Block) will be recorded in Syslog.



URL Access ControlEnable URL Access Control - Check the box to activate URL
Access Control. Note that the priority for URL Access Control is
higher than Restrict Web Feature. If the web content match the
setting set in URL Access Control, the router will execute the
action specified in this field and ignore the action specified under
Restrict Web Feature.

Prevent web access from IP address - Check the box to deny any web surfing activity using IP address, such as http://202.6.5.2. The reason for this is to prevent someone dodges the URL Access Control. You must clear your browser cache first so that the URL content filtering facility operates properly on a web page that you visited before.

Action – This setting is available only when Either : URL Access Control First or Either : Web Feature First is selected. *Pass* -Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

Block - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the keyword set here, it will be processed with reverse action.





Group/Object Selections – The Vigor router provides several frames for users to define keywords and each frame supports multiple keywords. The keyword could be a noun, a partial noun, or a complete URL string. Multiple keywords within a frame are separated by space, comma, or semicolon. In addition, the maximal length of each frame is 32-character long. After specifying keywords, the Vigor router will decline the connection request to the website whose URL string matched to any user-defined keyword. It should be noticed that the more simplified the blocking



http://192.168.1.1 - Group/Object Edit - Microsoft	
Object/Group Edit	
Keyword Object	None 🛩
or Keyword Object	None 🛩
or Keyword Object	None 💌
or <u>Keyword Group</u>	None 💌
or Keyword Group	None 💌
OK	Close

keyword list the more efficiently the Vigor router perform

Web FeatureEnable Restrict Web Feature - Check this box to make the
keyword being blocked or passed.

Action - This setting is available only when Either : URL Access Control First or Either : Web Feature Firs is selected. Pass allows accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

Pass - Allow accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

Block - Restrict accessing into the corresponding webpage with the keywords listed on the box below.

If the web pages do not match with the specified feature set here, it will be processed with reverse action.

Cookie - Check the box to filter out the cookie transmission from inside to outside world to protect the local user's privacy.

Proxy - Check the box to reject any proxy transmission. To control efficiently the limited-bandwidth usage, it will be of great value to provide the blocking mechanism that filters out the multimedia files downloading from web pages.

File Extension Profile – Choose one of the profiles that you configured in **Object Setting>> File Extension Objects** previously for passing or blocking the file downloading.



5.6.3 Web Content Filter Profile

We all know that the content on the Internet just like other types of media may be inappropriate sometimes. As a responsible parent or employer, you should protect those in your trust against the hazards. With Web filtering service of the Vigor router, you can protect your business from common primary threats, such as productivity, legal liability, network and security threats. For parents, you can protect your children from viewing adult websites or chat rooms.

Once you have activated your Web Filtering service in Vigor router and chosen the categories of website you wish to restrict, each URL address requested (e.g.www.bbc.co.uk) will be checked against our server database. This database is updated as frequent as daily by a global team of Internet researchers. The server will look up the URL and return a category to your router. Your Vigor router will then decide whether to allow access to this site according to the categories you have selected. Please note that this action will not introduce any delay in your Web surfing because each of multiple load balanced database servers can handle millions of requests for categorization.

Click CSM and click Web Content Filter Profile to open the profile setting page.

Profile	Name	Profile	Name
<u>1.</u>		<u>5.</u>	
<u>2.</u>		<u>6.</u>	
<u>3.</u>		<u>7.</u>	
<u>4.</u>		<u>8.</u>	
Iministration M	essage (Max 255 charact	ers)	
body> <center><</center>	br>The requested We e contact your system	b page has been block	-
ilter.Pleas nformation. <td>enter></td> <td></td> <td></td>	enter>		

CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

You can set eight profiles as Web content filter. Simply click the index number under Profile to open the following web page.



CSM >> Web Content Filter Profile

Profile Index : 1			
Profile Name:			
Action : Block 💌		log : Block 💌	
Groups Child Protection	Categories		
Select All Clear All	Chat Gambling Sex	Criminal Hacking	Drugs/Alcohol Hate speech Weapons
Leisure Select All Clear All	Advertisements Games Hobbies Personals Sports	Entertainment Glamour Lifestyle Photo Searches Streaming Media	Food Health Motor Vehicles Shopping Travel
Business Select All Clear All	Computing/Internet Politics Remote proxies	☐ Finance ☐ Real Estate ☐ Search Engine	☐ Job Search/Career ☐ Reference ☐ Web Mail
Others Select All Clear All	 Education News Usenet news 	☐ Hosting sites ☐ Religion ☐ uncategorised sites	☐ Kid Sites ☐ Sex Education
ction	Pass - allow acces categories listed o Block - restrict ac categories listed o If the web pages d	n the box below. cessing into the corre n the box below.	onding webpage with the sponding webpage with specified feature set her
og	Pass – Only the lo Block – Only the	-	

For this section, please refer to Web Content Filter user's guide.

Dray Tek

5.7 Bandwidth Management

Below shows the menu items for Bandwidth Management.

Bandwidth Management	
Sessions Limit	
Bandwidth Limit	
Quality of Service	

5.7.1 Sessions Limit

A PC with private IP address can access to the Internet via NAT router. The router will generate the records of NAT sessions for such connection. The P2P (Peer to Peer) applications (e.g., BitTorrent) always need many sessions for procession and also they will occupy over resources which might result in important accesses impacted. To solve the problem, you can use limit session to limit the session procession for specified Hosts.

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click Sessions Limit to open the web page.

	💿 Enat	ole 🔘 Disable					
	Default N	1ax Sessions: 100					
	Limitatio	on List					
	Index	Start IP	End	IP	Max S	essions	
	Start IP:	Limitation		End IP:			
			Add	Edit	Delete		
ne Sch	edule						
		 <u>Schedule</u> Setup: and Idle Timeout se 	ttings w	ill be ignor	, ed.		

Bandwidth Management >> Sessions Limit

To activate the function of limit session, simply click **Enable** and set the default session limit.

Enable	Click this button to activate the function of limit session.
Disable	Click this button to close the function of limit session.
Default session limit	Defines the default session number used for each computer in LAN.
Limitation List	Displays a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
Start IP	Defines the start IP address for limit session.
End IP	Defines the end IP address for limit session.



Maximum Sessions	Defines the available session number for each host in the specific range of IP addresses. If you do not set the session number in this field, the system will use the default session limit for the specific limitation you set for each index.
Add	Adds the specific session limitation onto the list above.
Edit	Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.
Delete	Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.
Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application – Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

5.7.2 Bandwidth Limit

The downstream or upstream from FTP, HTTP or some P2P applications will occupy large of bandwidth and affect the applications for other programs. Please use Limit Bandwidth to make the bandwidth usage more efficient.

In the **Bandwidth Management** menu, click **Bandwidth Limit** to open the web page.

Bandwidth Management >> Bandwidth Li	imit
--------------------------------------	------

	○ Enable ④ Disable
	Default TX Limit: 200 Kbps Default RX Limit: 800 Kbps
	Limitation List
	Index Start IP End IP TX limit RX limit
	Start IP: End IP:
	TX Limit: Kbps RX Limit: Kbps Add Edit Delete
ie Schi	adule
Inde>	k(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:,,,,
	: Action and Idle Timeout settings will be ignored.

To activate the function of limit bandwidth, simply click **Enable** and set the default upstream and downstream limit.

Enable	Click this button to activate the function of limit bandwidth.
Disable	Click this button to close the function of limit bandwidth.
Default TX limit	Define the default speed of the upstream for each computer in LAN.
Default RX limit	Define the default speed of the downstream for each computer in LAN.



Limitation List	Display a list of specific limitations that you set on this web page.
Start IP	Define the start IP address for limit bandwidth.
End IP	Define the end IP address for limit bandwidth.
TX limit	Define the limitation for the speed of the upstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.
RX limit	Define the limitation for the speed of the downstream. If you do not set the limit in this field, the system will use the default speed for the specific limitation you set for each index.
Add	Add the specific speed limitation onto the list above.
Edit	Allows you to edit the settings for the selected limitation.
Delete	Remove the selected settings existing on the limitation list.
Index (1-15) in Schedule Setup	You can type in four sets of time schedule for your request. All the schedules can be set previously in Application – Schedule web page and you can use the number that you have set in that web page.

5.7.3 Quality of Service

Deploying QoS (Quality of Service) management to guarantee that all applications receive the service levels required and sufficient bandwidth to meet performance expectations is indeed one important aspect of modern enterprise network.

One reason for QoS is that numerous TCP-based applications tend to continually increase their transmission rate and consume all available bandwidth, which is called TCP slow start. If other applications are not protected by QoS, it will detract much from their performance in the overcrowded network. This is especially essential to those are low tolerant of loss, delay or jitter (delay variation).

Another reason is due to congestions at network intersections where speeds of interconnected circuits mismatch or traffic aggregates, packets will queue up and traffic can be throttled back to a lower speed. If there's no defined priority to specify which packets should be discarded (or in another term "dropped") from an overflowing queue, packets of sensitive applications mentioned above might be the ones to drop off. How this will affect application performance?

There are two components within Primary configuration of QoS deployment:

- Classification: Identifying low-latency or crucial applications and marking them for high-priority service level enforcement throughout the network.
- Scheduling: Based on classification of service level to assign packets to queues and associated service types

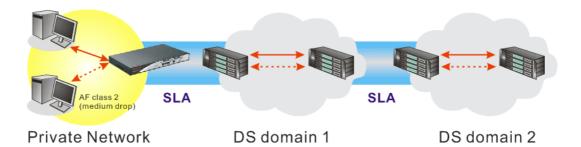
The basic QoS implementation in Vigor routers is to classify and schedule packets based on the service type information in the IP header. For instance, to ensure the connection with the headquarter, a teleworker may enforce an index of QoS Control to reserve bandwidth for HTTPS connection while using lots of application at the same time.

One more larger-scale implementation of QoS network is to apply DSCP (Differentiated Service Code Point) and IP Precedence disciplines at Layer 3. Compared with legacy IP Precedence that uses Type of Service (ToS) field in the IP header to define 8 service classes, DSCP is a successor creating 64 classes possible with backward IP Precedence compatibility.



In a QoS-enabled network, or Differentiated Service (DiffServ or DS) framework, a DS domain owner should sign a Service License Agreement (SLA) with other DS domain owners to define the service level provided toward traffic from different domains. Then each DS node in these domains will perform the priority treatment. This is called per-hop-behavior (PHB). The definition of PHB includes Expedited Forwarding (EF), Assured Forwarding (AF), and Best Effort (BE). AF defines the four classes of delivery (or forwarding) classes and three levels of drop precedence in each class.

Vigor routers as edge routers of DS domain shall check the marked DSCP value in the IP header of bypassing traffic, thus to allocate certain amount of resource execute appropriate policing, classification or scheduling. The core routers in the backbone will do the same checking before executing treatments in order to ensure service-level consistency throughout the whole QoS-enabled network.



However, each node may take different attitude toward packets with high priority marking since it may bind with the business deal of SLA among different DS domain owners. It's not easy to achieve deterministic and consistent high-priority QoS traffic throughout the whole network with merely Vigor router's effort.

In the Bandwidth Management menu, click Quality of Service to open the web page.

Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setu
WAN2	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setu
Class R			ame				Rule	Service	Гуре
Inde	ex	IN	unic						· · ·
Inde Class		N	unic				<u>Edit</u>		
	5 1	N	unic				<u>Edit</u> Edit	Edit	

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

This page displays the QoS settings result of the WAN interface. Click the **Setup** link to access into next page for the general setup of WAN (1/2) interface. As to class rule, simply click the **Edit** link to access into next for configuration.

You can configure general setup for the WAN interface, edit the Class Rule, and edit the Service Type for the Class Rule for your request.

General Setup for WAN Interface

When you click **Setup**, you can configure the bandwidth ratio for QoS of the WAN interface. There are four queues allowed for QoS control. The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules



can be adjusted for your necessity. Yet, the last one is reserved for the packets which are not suitable for the user-defined class rules.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

WAN1 General	Setup	
Enable the	QoS Control OUT	
	WAN Inbound Bandwidth	10000 Kbps
WAN Outbound Bandwidth		10000 Kbps
Index	Class Name	Reserved_bandwidth Ratio
Class 1		25 %
Class 2		25 %
Class 3		25 %
	Others	25 %
Enable UDP	Bandwidth Control	Limited_bandwidth Ratio 25 %
Outbound T	CP ACK Prioritize	Online Statistics
	OK Clear	Cancel

Enable the QoS Control	 The factory default for this setting is checked. Please also define which traffic the QoS Control settings will apply to. IN- apply to incoming traffic only. OUT-apply to outgoing traffic only. BOTH- apply to both incoming and outgoing traffic. Check this box and click OK, then click Setup link again. You will see the Online Statistics link appearing on this page.
WAN Inbound Bandwidth	It allows you to set the connecting rate of data input for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 10000kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.
WAN Outbound Bandwidth	It allows you to set the connecting rate of data output for WAN. For example, if your ADSL supports 1M of downstream and 256K upstream, please set 256kbps for this box. The default value is 10000kbps.
Reserved Bandwidth Ratio	It is reserved for the group index in the form of ratio of reserved bandwidth to upstream speed and reserved bandwidth to downstream speed .
Enable UDP Bandwidth Control	Check this and set the limited bandwidth ratio on the right field. This is a protection of TCP application traffic since UDP application traffic such as streaming video will exhaust lots of bandwidth.
Outbound TCP ACK Prioritize	The difference in bandwidth between download and upload are great in ADSL2+ environment. For the download speed might be impacted by the uploading TCP ACK, you can check this box to push ACK of upload faster to speed the network traffic.



Limited_bandwidth Ratio The ratio typed here is reserved for limited bandwidth of UDP application.

Online Statistics Display an online statistics for quality of service for your reference.

andwidth Management >> Quality of Service								
atistics		Refresh I	nterval: 💈 🚩 seconds	Refresh				
Direction	Class Name Res	erved-bandwidth Rati	o Outbound Throughput ((Bytes/sec)				
OUT		25%	0					
OUT		25%	0					
OUT		25%	0					
OUT	Others	25%	0					
		0 5	10 (Bps)					
	atistics Direction OUT OUT OUT	atistics Direction Class Name Res OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT OUT	atistics Refresh In Direction Class Name Reserved-bandwidth Rati OUT 25% OUT 25% OUT 25%	atistics Refresh Interval: 5 v seconds Direction Class Name Reserved-bandwidth Ratio Outbound Throughput OUT 25% 0 OUT 25% 0 OUT 25% 0 OUT 0 thers 25% 0 OUT 0 thers 0 Outbound Status				

Edit the Class Rule for QoS

The first three (Class 1 to Class 3) class rules can be adjusted for your necessity. To add, edit or delete the class rule, please click the **Edit** link of that one.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

General Setup Set to Factory Def							efault		
Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setup
WAN2	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	Setu

Class Rule			
Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		Edit	
Class 2		Edit	Edit
Class 3		Edit	

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page. Now you can define the name for that Class. In this case, "Test" is used as the name of Class Index #1.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

ne [est				
NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1	Empty	-	-	-	-
			Add Edit Delete]	



For adding a new rule, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

🗹 АСТ			
Local Address	Any	Edit	
Remote Address	Any	Edit	
DiffServ CodePoint	ANY	~	
Service Type	ANY	~	
Note: Please choose/se	etup the <u>Service Typ</u>	<u>e</u> first.	

ACT	Check this box to invoke these settings.				
Local Address	Click the Edit button to set the local IP address (on LAN) for the rule.				
Remote Address	Click the Edit button to set the remote IP address (on LAN/WAN) for the rule.				
Edit	It allows you to edit source address information.				
	🗿 http://192.168.1.1/doc/Qos1pEdt.htm - Microsoft Internet Explorer				
	Address Type Subnet Address 💙				
	Start IP Address 0.0.0.0				
	End IP Address				
	Subnet Mask 0.0.0.0				
	OK Close				
	Address Type – Determine the address type for the source address. For Single Address, you have to fill in Start IP address.				
	For Range Address , you have to fill in Start IP address and				
	End IP address.				
	For Subnet Address , you have to fill in Start IP address and Subnet Mask.				
DiffServ CodePoint	All the packets of data will be divided with different levels and will be processed according to the level type by the system. Please assign one of the levels of the data for processing with QoS control.				
Service Type	It determines the service type of the data for processing with QoS control. It can also be edited. You can choose the predefined service type from the Service Type drop down list. Those types are predefined in factory. Simply choose the one that you want for using by current QoS.				

By the way, you can set up to 20 rules for one Class. If you want to edit an existed rule, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit** to open the rule edit page for modification.



Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

ne	Game 1				
NO	Status	Local Address	Remote Address	DiffServ CodePoint	Service Type
1 ()	Active		Any	ANY	ANY
2 🔿	Active	~	Any	AF Class4 (High Drop)	TELNET(TCP:23)
		4	Add Edit Dele	te	

Edit the Service Type for Class Rule

To add a new service type, edit or delete an existed service type, please click the Edit link under Service Type field.

Bandwidth Management >> Quality of Service

Genera	l Setup						I.	Set to Factory D	efault
Index	Status	Bandwidth	Directon	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Others	UDP Bandwidth Control	
WAN1	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<u>Setup</u>
WAN2	Enable	10000Kbps/10000Kbps	Outbound	25%	25%	25%	25%	Inactive	<u>Setup</u>

Class Rule	
------------	--

Index	Name	Rule	Service Type
Class 1		<u>Edit</u>	
Class 2		<u>Edit</u>	Edit
Class 3		<u>Edit</u>	

After you click the **Edit** link, you will see the following page.

User Defined Service Type

NO	Name	Protocol	Port
1	Empty	-	-
	[Add Edit Delete	
		Cancel	

For adding a new service type, click **Add** to open the following page.

Bandwidth	Management >>	Quality of Service
Detroiter	managementer	adding of contrioo

Service Type Edit		
Service Nam	Э	
Service Type)	TCP 6
Port Configu	ation	
Туре		💿 Single 🔘 Range
Port N	umber	0 – 0
Service Name	Type in	OK Cancel a new service for your request.
Service Type	Choose service.	the type (TCP, UDP or TCP/UDP) for the new
Port Configuration	have to number Port N u	ingle or Range as the Type . If you select Range, you type in the starting port number and the end porting on the boxes below. umber – Type in the starting port number and the end number here if you choose Range as the type.

By the way, you can set up to 40 service types. If you want to edit/delete an existed service type, please select the radio button of that one and click **Edit/Delete** for modification.



5.8 Applications

Below shows the menu items for Applications.

Applications
Dynamic DNS
Schedule
▶ RADIUS
▶ UPnP
▶ IGMP
Wake on LAN

5.8.1 Dynamic DNS

The ISP often provides you with a dynamic IP address when you connect to the Internet via your ISP. It means that the public IP address assigned to your router changes each time you access the Internet. The Dynamic DNS feature lets you assign a domain name to a dynamic WAN IP address. It allows the router to update its online WAN IP address mappings on the specified Dynamic DNS server. Once the router is online, you will be able to use the registered domain name to access the router or internal virtual servers from the Internet. It is particularly helpful if you host a web server, FTP server, or other server behind the router.

Before you use the Dynamic DNS feature, you have to apply for free DDNS service to the DDNS service providers. The router provides up to three accounts from three different DDNS service providers. Basically, Vigor routers are compatible with the DDNS services supplied by most popular DDNS service providers such as **www.dyndns.org**, **www.no-ip.com**, **www.dtdns.com**, **www.changeip.com**, **www.dynamic- nameserver.com**. You should visit their websites to register your own domain name for the router.

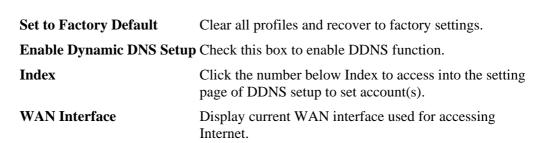
Enable the Function and Add a Dynamic DNS Account

- 1. Assume you have a registered domain name from the DDNS provider, say *hostname.dyndns.org*, and an account with username: *test* and password: *test*.
- 2. In the DDNS setup menu, check Enable Dynamic DNS Setup.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup

Enable Dynami	c DNS Setup	View Log	Force Update
	·		
counts:			
Index	WAN Interface	Domain Name	Active
<u>1.</u>	WAN1 First		x
<u>2.</u>	WAN1 First		x
3.	WAN1 First		х

Clear All



OK



Domain Name	Display the domain name that you set on the setting page of DDNS setup.
Active	Display if this account is active or inactive.
View Log	Display DDNS log status.
Force Update	Force the router updates its information to DDNS server.

3. Select Index number 1 to add an account for the router. Check **Enable Dynamic DNS Account**, and choose correct Service Provider: dyndns.org, type the registered hostname: *hostname* and domain name suffix: dyndns.org in the **Domain Name** block.

Applications >> Dynamic DNS Setup >> Dynamic DNS Account Setup

Index : 1 Enable Dynamic DNS	Account
WAN Interface	WAN1 First 💌
Service Provider	dyndns.org (www.dyndns.org)
Service Type	Dynamic 💌
Domain Name	
Login Name	(max. 64 characters)
Password	(max. 23 characters)
Wildcards	
Backup MX	
Mail Extender	
	OK Clear Cancel

Enable Dynamic DNS Account	Check this box to enable the current account. If you did check the box, you will see a check mark appeared on the Active column of the previous web page in step 2).
WAN Interface	Select the WAN interface order to apply settings here.
Service Provider	Select the service provider for the DDNS account.
Service Type	Select a service type (Dynamic, Custom or Static). If you choose Custom, you can modify the domain that is chosen in the Domain Name field.
Domain Name	Type in one domain name that you applied previously. Use the drop down list to choose the desired domain.
Login Name	Type in the login name that you set for applying domain.
Password	Type in the password that you set for applying domain.

4. Click **OK** button to activate the settings. You will see your setting has been saved.

The Wildcard and Backup MX features are not supported for all Dynamic DNS providers. You could get more detailed information from their websites.



5.8.2 Schedule

The Vigor router has a built-in real time clock which can update itself manually or automatically by means of Network Time Protocols (NTP). As a result, you can not only schedule the router to dialup to the Internet at a specified time, but also restrict Internet access to certain hours so that users can connect to the Internet only during certain hours, say, business hours. The schedule is also applicable to other functions.

You have to set your time before set schedule. In **System Maintenance>> Time and Date** menu, press **Inquire Time** button to set the Vigor router's clock to current time of your PC. The clock will reset once if you power down or reset the router. There is another way to set up time. You can inquiry an NTP server (a time server) on the Internet to synchronize the router's clock. This method can only be applied when the WAN connection has been built up.

Schedule:			Set to Factory Default
Index	Status	Index	Status
<u>1.</u>	Х	<u>9.</u>	Х
<u>2.</u>	Х	<u>10.</u>	х
<u>3.</u>	х	<u>11.</u>	×
<u>4.</u>	Х	<u>12.</u>	х
<u>5.</u>	Х	<u>13.</u>	х
<u>6.</u>	Х	<u>14.</u>	х
<u>7.</u>	х	<u>15.</u>	х
<u>8.</u>	×		

Applications >> Schedule

Status: v --- Active, x --- Inactive

Set to Factory Default	Clear all profiles and recover to factory settings.	
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of schedule.	
Status	Display if this schedule setting is active or inactive.	

You can set up to 15 schedules. Then you can apply them to your **Internet Access** or **VPN** and **Remote Access** >> **LAN to LAN** settings.

To add a schedule, please click any index, say Index No. 1. The detailed settings of the call schedule with index 1 are shown below.

Applications >> Schedule

ndex No. 1 Enable Schedule Setup			
	yyyy-mm-dd)	2000 🗸 - 1 👻 - 1 👻	
Start Time (hh:mm)		
Duration Tim	e (hh:mm)		
Action		Force On	
Idle Timeout		minute(s).(max. 255, 0 for default)	
How Often	How Often		
🔘 Once	Once		
💿 Weekday	/s		
📃 Sun	🗹 Mon 🛛] Tue 🗹 Wed 🗹 Thu 🗹 Fri 🔲 Sat	

Dray Tek

Enable Schedule Setup	Check to enable the schedule.	
Start Date (yyyy-mm-dd)	Specify the starting date of the schedule.	
Start Time (hh:mm)	Specify the starting time of the schedule.	
Duration Time (hh:mm)	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule.	
Action	 Specify which action Call Schedule should apply during the period of the schedule. Force On -Force the connection to be always on. Force Down -Force the connection to be always down. Enable Dial-On-Demand -Specify the connection to be dial-on-demand and the value of idle timeout should be specified in Idle Timeout field. Disable Dial-On-Demand -Specify the connection to be up when it has traffic on the line. Once there is no traffic over idle timeout, the connection will be down and never up again during the schedule. 	
Idle Timeout	Specify the duration (or period) for the schedule. How often - Specify how often the schedule will be applied Once - The schedule will be applied just once Weekdays - Specify which days in one week should perform the schedule.	

Example

Suppose you want to control the PPPoE Internet access connection to be always on (Force On) from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week. Other time the Internet access connection should be disconnected (Force Down).

Office Hour:	$11 \frac{12}{2} 1$ -9 - 3	$11 \frac{12}{2} \frac{1}{2}$
(Force On)	87654	87654
Mon - Sun	9:00 am to	6:00 pm

- 1. Make sure the PPPoE connection and **Time Setup** is working properly.
- 2. Configure the PPPoE always on from 9:00 to 18:00 for whole week.
- 3. Configure the **Force Down** from 18:00 to next day 9:00 for whole week.
- 4. Assign these two profiles to the PPPoE Internet access profile. Now, the PPPoE Internet connection will follow the schedule order to perform **Force On** or **Force Down** action according to the time plan that has been pre-defined in the schedule profiles.



5.8.3 RADIUS

Applications >> RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a security authentication client/server protocol that supports authentication, authorization and accounting, which is widely used by Internet service providers. It is the most common method of authenticating and authorizing dial-up and tunneled network users.

The built-in RADIUS client feature enables the router to assist the remote dial-in user or a wireless station and the RADIUS server in performing mutual authentication. It enables centralized remote access authentication for network management.

RADIUS Setup	
🗹 Enable	
Server IP Add	dress
Destination P	Port 1812
Shared Secre	et
Confirm Share	ed Secret
C	OK Clear Cancel
Enable	Check to enable RADIUS client feature
Server IP Address	Enter the IP address of RADIUS server
Destination Port	The UDP port number that the RADIUS server is using. The default value is 1812, based on RFC 2138.
Shared Secret	The RADIUS server and client share a secret that is used to authenticate the messages sent between them. Both sides must be configured to use the same shared secret.
Confirm Shared Secret	Re-type the Shared Secret for confirmation.

5.8.4 UPnP

The **UPnP** (Universal Plug and Play) protocol is supported to bring to network connected devices the ease of installation and configuration which is already available for directly connected PC peripherals with the existing Windows 'Plug and Play' system. For NAT routers, the major feature of UPnP on the router is "NAT Traversal". This enables applications inside the firewall to automatically open the ports that they need to pass through a router. It is more reliable than requiring a router to work out by itself which ports need to be opened. Further, the user does not have to manually set up port mappings or a DMZ. **UPnP is available on Windows XP** and the router provide the associated support for MSN Messenger to allow full use of the voice, video and messaging features.

Applications >> UPnP

UPnP
Enable UPnP Service
Enable Connection control Service
Enable Connection Status Service

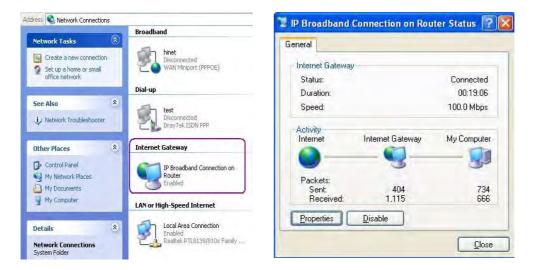
Note: If you intend running UPnP service inside your LAN, you should check the appropriate service above to allow control, as well as the appropriate UPnP settings.



Enable UPNP Service

Accordingly, you can enable either the **Connection Control Service** or **Connection Status Service**.

After setting **Enable UPNP Service** setting, an icon of **IP Broadband Connection on Router** on Windows XP/Network Connections will appear. The connection status and control status will be able to be activated. The NAT Traversal of UPnP enables the multimedia features of your applications to operate. This has to manually set up port mappings or use other similar methods. The screenshots below show examples of this facility.



The UPnP facility on the router enables UPnP aware applications such as MSN Messenger to discover what are behind a NAT router. The application will also learn the external IP address and configure port mappings on the router. Subsequently, such a facility forwards packets from the external ports of the router to the internal ports used by the application.



ieneral	Services
Connect to the Internet using:	Select the services running on your network that Internet users can access.
🧐 IP Broadband Connection on Router	(Services
This connection allows you to connect to the Internet through a shared connection on another computer.	 ☐ Ftp Example ✓ msnmsgr (192.168.29.11:13135) 60654 UDP ✓ msnmsgr (192.168.29.11:7824) 13251 UDP ✓ msnmsgr (192.168.29.11:8789) 63231 TCP

The reminder as regards concern about Firewall and UPnP

Can't work with Firewall Software

Enabling firewall applications on your PC may cause the UPnP function not working properly. This is because these applications will block the accessing ability of some network ports.

Security Considerations

Activating the UPnP function on your network may incur some security threats. You should consider carefully these risks before activating the UPnP function.

- Some Microsoft operating systems have found out the UPnP weaknesses and hence you need to ensure that you have applied the latest service packs and patches.
- Non-privileged users can control some router functions, including removing and adding port mappings.

The UPnP function dynamically adds port mappings on behalf of some UPnP-aware applications. When the applications terminate abnormally, these mappings may not be removed.

5.8.5 IGMP

IGMP is the abbreviation of *Internet Group Management Protocol*. It is a communication protocol which is mainly used for managing the membership of Internet Protocol multicast groups. For invoking IGMP Snooping function, you have to check the Enable IGMP Proxy box first for activating the IGMP proxy function.

Applications >>	ations >> IGMP					
IGMP						
will access any Enable IGMP S Enable IGMP S	to act as a mui / multicast grou Snooping nooping, multic	up. But this fu ast traffic is (inction take no only forwarded	o affect when to ports that I	able IGMP Proxy Bridge Mode i nave members o s broadcast tra	s enabled. of that group.
		0	K Cano	el		
Working Multicas	t Groups					Refresh
Index	Group	ID	P1	P2	P3	P4
able IGMP l	Proxy				ction. The aj gh WAN por	
Cnable IGMP S	Snooping				ction. The aj e clients in L	
Froup ID			range for IC	•	r the multica from 224.0.0	v .
1 to P4		It indicat	es the LAN	port used fo	r the multica	ast group.

Refresh Click this link to renew the working multicast group status.

If you check Enable IGMP Proxy, you will get the following page. All the multicast groups will be listed and all the LAN ports (P1 to P4) are available for use.



5.8.6 Wake on LAN

A PC client on LAN can be woken up by the router it connects. When a user wants to wake up a specified PC through the router, he/she must type correct MAC address of the specified PC on this web page of **Wake on LAN** of this router.

In addition, such PC must have installed a network card supporting WOL function. By the way, WOL function must be set as "Enable" on the BIOS setting.

Application)>> Wa	ke on	LAN
-------------	--------	-------	-----

Address:	Note: Wake on can wake up thr	LAN integrates with <u>Bind IP to MAC</u> function, only binded PCs ough IP.
IAC Address:	Wake by:	MAC Address 👻
	IP Address:	🔽
esult	MAC Address:	Wake Up!
	Result	

Wake by	choose Wake by MAC MAC address of the h	you to wake up the binded IP. If you C Address, you have to type the correct ost in MAC Address boxes. If you ddress, you have to choose the correct IP
	Wake by:	MAC Address MAC Address IP Address
IP Address	Firewall>>Bind IP to	have been configured in MAC will be shown in this drop down lress from the drop down list that you
MAC Address	Type any one of the M	IAC address of the binded PCs.
Wake Up	Click this button to wa figure. The result will	ake up the selected IP. See the following be shown on the box.

Application >	> Wake on LAN
---------------	---------------

Wake by: MAC Address IP Address: MAC Address: Wake Up!	
MAC Address: Wake Up!	
Result	



5.9 VPN and Remote Access

A Virtual Private Network (VPN) is the extension of a private network that encompasses links across shared or public networks like the Internet. In short, by VPN technology, you can send data between two computers across a shared or public network in a manner that emulates the properties of a point-to-point private link.

Below shows the menu items for VPN and Remote Access.

VPN and Remote Access
Remote Access Control
PPP General Setup
IPSec General Setup
IPSec Peer Identity
Remote Dial-in User
LAN to LAN
Connection Management

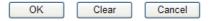
5.9.1 Remote Access Control

Enable the necessary VPN service as you need. If you intend to run a VPN server inside your LAN, you should disable the VPN service of Vigor Router to allow VPN tunnel pass through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings, such as DMZ or open port.

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Access Control Setup

Remote Access Control S	etup
	Enable PPTP VPN Service
	Enable IPSec VPN Service
	Enable L2TP VPN Service

Note: If you intend running a VPN server inside your LAN, you should uncheck the appropriate protocol above to allow pass-through, as well as the appropriate NAT settings.





5.9.2 PPP General Setup

This submenu only applies to PPP-related VPN connections, such as PPTP, L2TP, L2TP over IPSec.

PPP General Setup			
PPP/MP Protocol Dial-In PPP		IP Address Assignment for (When DHCP Disable set)	Dial-In Users
Authentication	PAP or CHAP 💌	Start IP Address	192.168.1.200
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE)	Optional MPPE		
Mutual Authentication	(PAP) (Yes 💽 No		
Username			
Password			

Dial-In PPP Authentication PAP Only PAP or CHAP	Select this option to force the router to authenticate dial-in users with the PAP protocol. Selecting this option means the router will attempt to authenticate dial-in users with the CHAP protocol first. If the dial-in user does not support this protocol, it will fall back to use the PAP protocol for authentication.
Dial-In PPP Encryption (MPPE Optional MPPE	This option represents that the MPPE encryption method will be optionally employed in the router for the remote dial-in user. If the remote dial-in user does not support the MPPE encryption algorithm, the router will transmit "no MPPE encrypted packets". Otherwise, the MPPE encryption scheme will be used to encrypt the data. Optional MPPE Optional MPPE Require MPPE(40/128 bit) Maximum MPPE(128 bit) Require MPPE (40/128bits) - Selecting this option will force the router to encrypt packets by using the MPPE encryption algorithm. In addition, the remote dial-in user will use 40-bit to perform encryption prior to using 128-bit for encryption. In other words, if 128-bit MPPE encryption method is not available, then 40-bit encryption scheme will be applied to encrypt the data. Maximum MPPE - This option indicates that the router will use the MPPE encryption scheme with maximum bits (128-bit) to encrypt the data.
Mutual Authentication (PAP)	The Mutual Authentication function is mainly used to communicate with other routers or clients who need bi-directional authentication in order to provide stronger security, for example, Cisco routers. So you should enable this function when your peer router requires mutual authentication. You should further specify the User Name and Password of the mutual authentication peer.
Start IP Address	Enter a start IP address for the dial-in PPP connection. You should choose an IP address from the local private network.



For example, if the local private network is 192.168.1.0/255.255.255.0, you could choose 192.168.1.200 as the Start IP Address. But, you have to notice that the first two IP addresses of 192.168.1.200 and 192.168.1.201 are reserved for ISDN remote dial-in user.

5.9.3 IPSec General Setup

In IPSec General Setup, there are two major parts of configuration.

There are two phases of IPSec.

- Phase 1: negotiation of IKE parameters including encryption, hash, Diffie-Hellman parameter values, and lifetime to protect the following IKE exchange, authentication of both peers using either a Pre-Shared Key or Digital Signature (x.509). The peer that starts the negotiation proposes all its policies to the remote peer and then remote peer tries to find a highest-priority match with its policies. Eventually to set up a secure tunnel for IKE Phase 2.
- Phase 2: negotiation IPSec security methods including Authentication Header (AH) or Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) for the following IKE exchange and mutual examination of the secure tunnel establishment.

There are two encapsulation methods used in IPSec, **Transport** and **Tunnel**. The **Transport** mode will add the AH/ESP payload and use original IP header to encapsulate the data payload only. It can just apply to local packet, e.g., L2TP over IPSec. The **Tunnel** mode will not only add the AH/ESP payload but also use a new IP header (Tunneled IP header) to encapsulate the whole original IP packet.

Authentication Header (AH) provides data authentication and integrity for IP packets passed between VPN peers. This is achieved by a keyed one-way hash function to the packet to create a message digest. This digest will be put in the AH and transmitted along with packets. On the receiving side, the peer will perform the same one-way hash on the packet and compare the value with the one in the AH it receives.

Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) is a security protocol that provides data confidentiality and protection with optional authentication and replay detection service.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec General Setup

IKE Authentication Method		
Pre-Shared Key		
Confirm Pre-Shared Key	••••	
IPSec Security Method		
🗹 Medium (AH)		
Data will be authentic, but	: will not be encrypted.	
High (ESP) 🗹 DES 🔽	3DES 🗹 AES	
Data will be encrypted and	authentic.	

IKE Authentication MethodThis usually applies to those are remote dial-in user or node
(LAN-to-LAN) which uses dynamic IP address and
IPSec-related VPN connections such as L2TP over IPSec
and IPSec tunnel.**Pre-Shared Key -**Currently only support Pre-Shared Key

VigorIPPBX 3510 Series User's Guide

	authentication. Pre-Shared Key- Specify a key for IKE authentication Confirm Pre-Shared Key- Retype the characters to confirm the pre-shared key.
IPSec Security Method	 Medium - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. High - Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.

5.9.4 IPSec Peer Identity

To use digital certificate for peer authentication in either LAN-to-LAN connection or Remote User Dial-In connection, here you may edit a table of peer certificate for selection. As shown below, the router provides **32** entries of digital certificates for peer dial-in users.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec Peer Identity

509 Peer ID Accounts:				Set to Factory Default		
Index	Name	Status	Index	Name	Status	
<u>1.</u>	???	X	<u>17.</u>	???	×	
<u>2.</u>	???	X	<u>18.</u>	???	×	
<u>3.</u>	???	X	<u>19.</u>	???	×	
<u>4.</u>	???	X	<u>20.</u>	???	×	
<u>5.</u>	???	×	<u>21.</u>	???	×	
<u>6.</u>	???	X	<u>22.</u>	???	×	
<u>7.</u>	???	×	<u>23.</u>	???	×	
<u>8.</u>	???	×	<u>24.</u>	???	×	
<u>9.</u>	???	X	<u>25.</u>	???	×	
<u>10.</u>	???	×	<u>26.</u>	???	×	
<u>11.</u>	???	X	<u>27.</u>	???	×	
<u>12.</u>	???	×	<u>28.</u>	???	×	
<u>13.</u>	???	×	<u>29.</u>	???	×	
<u>14.</u>	???	×	<u>30.</u>	???	×	
<u>15.</u>	???	×	<u>31.</u>	???	×	
<u>16.</u>	???	X	<u>32.</u>	???	×	

Set to Factory Default

Click it to clear all indexes.

Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page
	of IPSec Peer Identity.

Name

Display the profile name of that index.

Click each index to edit one peer digital certificate. There are three security levels of digital signature authentication: Fill each necessary field to authenticate the remote peer. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec Peer Identity

Profile Index : 1	
Profile Name ???	
Enable this account	
O Accept Subject Alternative Nam	e
Туре	IP Address
IP	
O Accept Subject Name	
Country (C)	
State (ST)	
Location (L)	
Orginization (O)	
Orginization Unit (OU)	
Common Name (CN)	
Email (E)	
	OK Clear Cancel
Profile Name	Type in a name in this file.
Accept Any Peer ID	Click to accept any peer regardless of its identity.
Accept Subject Alternative Name	Click to check one specific field of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field can be IP Address , Domain , or E-mail Address . The box under the Type will appear according to the type you select and ask you to fill in corresponding setting.

Accept Subject Name Click to check the specific fields of digital signature to accept the peer with matching value. The field includes Country (C), State (ST), Location (L), Organization (O), Organization Unit (OU), Common Name (CN), and Email (E).



5.9.5 Remote Dial-in User

You can manage remote access by maintaining a table of remote user profile, so that users can be authenticated to dial-in via ISDN or build the VPN connection. You may set parameters including specified connection peer ID, connection type (ISDN Dial-In connection, VPN connection - including PPTP, IPSec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPSec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router provides **32** access accounts for dial-in users. Besides, you can extend the user accounts to the RADIUS server through the built-in RADIUS client function. The following figure shows the summary table.

emote Access User Accounts:			Set to Factory Default		
Index	User	Status	Index	User	Status
<u>1.</u>	???	X	<u>17.</u>	???	Х
<u>2.</u>	???	X	<u>18.</u>	???	×
<u>3.</u>	???	X	<u>19.</u>	???	X
<u>4.</u>	???	X	<u>20.</u>	???	×
<u>5.</u>	???	X	<u>21.</u>	???	×
<u>6.</u>	???	X	<u>22.</u>	???	×
<u>7.</u>	???	X	<u>23.</u>	???	×
<u>8.</u>	???	X	<u>24.</u>	???	×
<u>9.</u>	???	X	<u>25.</u>	???	Х
<u>10.</u>	???	X	<u>26.</u>	???	X
<u>11.</u>	???	X	<u>27.</u>	???	Х
<u>12.</u>	???	X	<u>28.</u>	???	×
<u>13.</u>	???	X	<u>29.</u>	???	×
<u>14.</u>	???	X	<u>30.</u>	???	×
<u>15.</u>	???	X	<u>31.</u>	???	×
<u>16.</u>	???	×	<u>32.</u>	???	X

VPN and Remote Access >> Remote Dial-in User

Set to Factory Default	Click to clear all indexes.
Index	Click the number below Index to access into the setting page of Remote Dial-in User.
User	Display the username for the specific dial-in user of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol ??? represents that the profile is empty.
Status	Display the access state of the specific dial-in user. The symbol V and X represent the specific dial-in user to be active and inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit one remote user profile. **Each Dial-In Type requires you to fill the different corresponding fields on the right.** If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanation will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

Index No. 1 User account and Authentication Enable this account Idle Timeout 300 second(s)	Username ??? Password
Allowed Dial-In Type	IKE Authentication Method
 ✓ IPSec Tunnel ✓ L2TP with IPSec Policy None 	IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None
	IPSec Security Method Medium(AH)
	High(ESP) DES AES Local ID (optional)

Enable this account	Check the box to enable this function. Idle Timeout- If the dial-in user is idle over the limitation of the timer, the router will drop this connection. By default, the Idle Timeout is set to 300 seconds.
РРТР	Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below
IPSec Tunnel	Allow the remote dial-in user to make an IPSec VPN connection through Internet.
L2TP	Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below: None - Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. Nice to Have - Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. Must - Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.
User Name	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
Password	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
IKE Authentication Method	This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node. Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63)



	as the pre-shared key. Digital Signature (X.509) – Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >> IPSec Peer Identity.
IPSec Security Method	This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Check the Medium, DES, 3DES or AES box as the security method. Medium - Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is invoked. You can uncheck it to disable it. High-Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be anomated and outhenticated. You may select
	 (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES. Local ID - Specify a local ID to be used for Dial-in setting in the LAN-to-LAN Profile setup. This item is optional and can be used only in IKE aggressive mode.

5.9.6 LAN to LAN

Here you can manage LAN-to-LAN connections by maintaining a table of connection profiles. You may set parameters including specified connection direction (dial-in or dial-out), connection peer ID, connection type (VPN connection - including PPTP, IPSec Tunnel, and L2TP by itself or over IPSec) and corresponding security methods, etc.

The router supports 2 VPN tunnels and provides up to **32** profiles simultaneously. The following figure shows the summary table.

Index	Name	Status	Index	Name	Status
<u>1.</u>	???	×	<u>17.</u>	???	×
<u>2.</u>	???	×	<u>18.</u>	???	×
<u>3.</u>	???	×	<u>19.</u>	???	×
<u>4.</u>	???	×	<u>20.</u>	???	×
<u>5.</u>	???	×	<u>21.</u>	???	×
<u>6.</u>	???	×	<u>22.</u>	???	×
<u>7.</u>	???	×	<u>23.</u>	???	×
<u>8.</u>	???	×	<u>24.</u>	???	×
<u>9.</u>	???	×	<u>25.</u>	???	×
<u>10.</u>	???	×	<u>26.</u>	???	×
<u>11.</u>	???	×	<u>27.</u>	???	×
<u>12.</u>	???	×	<u>28.</u>	???	×
<u>13.</u>	???	×	<u>29.</u>	???	×
<u>14.</u>	???	×	<u>30.</u>	???	×
<u>15.</u>	???	×	<u>31.</u>	???	×
<u>16.</u>	???	×	<u>32.</u>	???	×

VPN and Remote Access >> LAN to LAN

Set to Factory Default

Name

Click to clear all indexes.

Indicate the name of the LAN-to-LAN profile. The symbol **???** represents that the profile is empty.

Indicate the status of individual profiles. The symbol V and X represent the profile to be active and

Status



inactive, respectively.

Click each index to edit each profile and you will get the following page. Each LAN-to-LAN profile includes 4 subgroups. If the fields gray out, it means you may leave it untouched. The following explanations will guide you to fill all the necessary fields.

For the web page is too long, we divide the page into several sections for explanation.

I. Common Settings Profile Name ??? Call Direction Both Enable this profile Always on Idle Timeout 300 second(s) PNO Connection Through WAN1 First Idle Timeout 300 second(s) VPN Connection Through WAN1 First Idle Timeout 300 second(s) Vettios Naming Packet Pass Block Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP IDle-Out Settings Pype of Server I am calling Username ??? PAP/CHAP Password PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP VJ Compression On © Off Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key I/E Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) Digital Signature(X.509) None IPsec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication Advanced	Profile Index : 1	
 Always on Always on Always on Ide Timeout 300 second(s) Enable PING to keep alive PING to the IP Dial-Out Settings Type of Server I am calling Username PPTP IPSec Tunnel L2TP with IPSec Policy Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) Fre-Shared Key IKE Authentication Method Orgital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication 		
Lineble data product Junction and product VPN Connection Through WAN1 First V Idle Timeout Junction and product Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block Pass Block Enable PING to keep alive 2. Dial-Out Settings Idle Timeout Junction and product		Call Direction 💿 Both 🔘 Dial-Out 🔘 Dial-In
VPN Connection Through WAN1 First Netbios Naming Packet Pass Block PING to the IP 2. Dial-Out Settings Type of Server I am calling PPTP IPSec Tunnel L2TP with IPSec Policy None VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP)	Enable this profile	Always on
Netbios Naming Packet Pass Pass Block PING to the IP 2. Dial-Out Settings Type of Server I am calling PPTP IPSec Tunnel L2TP with IPSec Policy None Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key IMME Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication		Idle Timeout 300 second(s)
2. Dial-Out Settings Type of Server I am calling PPTP IPSec Tunnel L2TP with IPSec Policy None Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key IBSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication Y	VPN Connection Through WAN1 First 🖌	Enable PING to keep alive
Type of Server I am calling Username ??? PPTP Password PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP ▼ L2TP with IPSec Policy None ✓ ✓ ✓ ✓ Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) ✓ IKE Authentication Method ✓ ● Pre-Shared Key ● <th>Netbios Naming Packet ③ Pass 〇 Block</th> <td>PING to the IP</td>	Netbios Naming Packet ③ Pass 〇 Block	PING to the IP
O PPTP O IPSec Tunnel O L2TP with IPSec Policy None V3 Compression On O Off IKE Authentication Method IKE Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication	2. Dial-Out Settings	
 ○ IPSec Tunnel ○ L2TP with IPSec Policy None > Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) > Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) > IKE Authentication Method ● Pre-Shared Key ○ Digital Signature(X.509) > None > IPSec Security Method ● Medium(AH) > High(ESP) DES without Authentication 	Type of Server I am calling	Username ???
 L2TP with IPSec Policy None Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication V 	О РРТР	Password
Server IP/Host Name for VPN. (such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) IKE Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication	O IPSec Tunnel	PPP Authentication PAP/CHAP V
(such as draytek.com or 123.45.67.89) Pre-Shared Key	O L2TP with IPSec Policy None	VJ Compression On Off
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:		 Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature(X.509) None IPSec Security Method Medium(AH) High(ESP) DES without Authentication Advanced

	_		
VPN and	Remote /	Access >>	LAN to LAN

Profile Name	Specify a name for the profile of the LAN-to-LAN connection.			
Enable this profile	Check here to activate this profile.			
VPN Connection Through	Use the drop down menu to choose a proper WAN interface for this profile. This setting is useful for dial-out only.			
	VPN Connection Through:	WAN1 First WAN1 First WAN1 Only WAN2 First WAN2 Only		
	XX7 A NT4 T1 4 XX71 11 4			

WAN1 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN1 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN1 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.WAN1 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN1 as the only channel for VPN connection.

	WAN2 First - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the first channel for VPN connection. If WAN2 fails, the router will use another WAN interface instead.WAN2 Only - While connecting, the router will use WAN2 as the only channel for VPN connection.
Netbios Naming Packet	 Pass – click it to have an inquiry for data transmission between the hosts located on both sides of VPN Tunnel while connecting. Block – When there is conflict occurred between the hosts on both sides of VPN Tunnel in connecting, such function can block data transmission of Netbios Naming Packet inside the tunnel.
Call Direction	Specify the allowed call direction of this LAN-to-LAN profile. Both :-initiator/responder Dial-Out - initiator only Dial-In - responder only.
Always On or Idle Timeout	Always On-Check to enable router always keep VPN connection.Idle Timeout: The default value is 300 seconds. If the connection has been idled over the value, the router will drop the connection.
Enable PING to keep alive	This function is to help the router to determine the status of IPSec VPN connection, especially useful in the case of abnormal VPN IPSec tunnel disruption. For details, please refer to the note below. Check to enable the transmission of PING packets to a specified IP address.
PING to the IP	Enter the IP address of the remote host that located at the other-end of the VPN tunnel.
	Enable PING to Keep Alive is used to handle abnormal IPSec VPN connection disruption. It will help to provide the state of a VPN connection for router's judgment of redial. Normally, if any one of VPN peers wants to disconnect the connection, it should follow a serial of packet exchange procedure to inform each other. However, if the remote peer disconnect without notice, Vigor router will by no where to know this situation. To resolve this dilemma, by continuously sending PING packets to the remote host, the Vigor router can know the true existence of this VPN connection and react accordingly. This is independent of DPD (dead peer detection).
РРТР	Build a PPTP VPN connection to the server through the Internet. You should set the identity like User Name and Password below for the authentication of remote server.
IPSec Tunnel	Build an IPSec VPN connection to the server through Internet.
L2TP with	Build a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below: None: Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection.

	Nice to Have: Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-out VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. Must: Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.
User Name	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
Password	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
PPP Authentication	This field is applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. PAP/CHAP is the most common selection due to wild compatibility.
VJ compression	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. Normally set to Yes to improve bandwidth utilization.
IKE Authentication Method	 This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy. Pre-Shared Key - Input 1-63 characters as pre-shared key. Digital Signature (X.509) - Select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPSec Peer Identity.
IPSec Security Method	This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy.
Medium	Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active.
	 High (ESP-Encapsulating Security Payload)- means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. Select from below: DES without Authentication -Use DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. DES with Authentication-Use DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm. 3DES without Authentication-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. 3DES with Authentication-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. 3DES with Authentication-Use triple DES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm. AES without Authentication-Use AES encryption algorithm and not apply any authentication scheme. AES with Authentication-Use AES encryption algorithm and apply MD5 or SHA-1 authentication algorithm
Advanced	Specify mode, proposal and key life of each IKE phase, Gateway etc. The window of advance setup is shown as below:



🗿 http://192.168.1.1 - IKE advanced settings - Microsoft Internet Explorer 📃 🗖 🔀					
IKE advanced settings					
IKE phase 1 mode	Main mode Aggressive mode				
IKE phase 1 proposal	DES_MD5_G1/DES_SHA1_G1/3DES_MD5_G1/3DES_MD5_G2 💌				
IKE phase 2 proposal	HMAC_SHA1/HMAC_MD5 🔽				
IKE phase 1 key lifetime	28800 (900 ~ 86400)				
IKE phase 2 key lifetime	3600 (600 ~ 86400)				
Perfect Forward Secret	O Disable				
Local ID					
	OK Close				

IKE phase 1 mode -Select from **Main** mode and **Aggressive** mode. The ultimate outcome is to exchange security proposals to create a protected secure channel. **Main** mode is more secure than **Aggressive** mode since more exchanges are done in a secure channel to set up the IPSec session. However, the **Aggressive** mode is faster. The default value in Vigor router is Main mode.

IKE phase 1 proposal-To propose the local available authentication schemes and encryption algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Two combinations are available for Aggressive mode and nine for **Main** mode. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most schemes.

IKE phase 2 proposal-To propose the local available algorithms to the VPN peers, and get its feedback to find a match. Three combinations are available for both modes. We suggest you select the combination that covers the most algorithms.

IKE phase 1 key lifetime-For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 28800 seconds. You may specify a value in between 900 and 86400 seconds. **IKE phase 2 key lifetime-**For security reason, the lifetime of key should be defined. The default value is 3600 seconds.

You may specify a value in between 600 and 86400 seconds. **Perfect Forward Secret (PFS)**-The IKE Phase 1 key will be reused to avoid the computation complexity in phase 2. The default value is inactive this function.

Local ID-In **Aggressive** mode, Local ID is on behalf of the IP address while identity authenticating with remote VPN server. The length of the ID is limited to 47 characters.

3. Dial-In Settings				
Allowed Dial-In Type ♥ PPTP ♥ IPSec Tunnel ♥ L2TP with IPSec Policy None ♥			Username Password VJ Compression	???
Specify Remote VPN Peer VPN Server IP or Peer ID	I Gateway		IKE Authentication I Pre-Shared Key IKE Pre-Shared Key Digital Signature() None IPSec Security Methe Medium(AH) High(ESP)	(.509)
4. TCP/IP Network Set	tinas			JU JUES V AES
My WAN IP 0.0.0.0 Remote Gateway IP 0.0.0.0 Remote Network IP 0.0.0.0 Remote Network Mask 255.255.255.0		do	Disable v emote network, you have to Route v ute to this VPN tunnel (Only	
Allowed Dial-In Ty PPTP IPSec Tunnel	pe	Determine t Allow the re connection t Name and F Allow the re	lear Cancel he dial-in connecti emote dial-in user t through the Interne Password of remote emote dial-in user t	on with different types. To make a PPTP VPN t. You should set the Use dial-in user below.
connection through alone or with IPSec.			emote dial-in user t through the Interne h IPSec. Select fro	to make a L2TP VPN t. You can select to use l m below:

Allowed Dial-In Type	Determine the dial-in connection with different types.
PPTP	Allow the remote dial-in user to make a PPTP VPN connection through the Internet. You should set the User Name and Password of remote dial-in user below.
IPSec Tunnel	Allow the remote dial-in user to trigger an IPSec VPN connection through Internet.
L2TP	 Allow the remote dial-in user to make a L2TP VPN connection through the Internet. You can select to use L2TP alone or with IPSec. Select from below: None - Do not apply the IPSec policy. Accordingly, the VPN connection employed the L2TP without IPSec policy can be viewed as one pure L2TP connection. Nice to Have - Apply the IPSec policy first, if it is applicable during negotiation. Otherwise, the dial-in VPN connection becomes one pure L2TP connection. Must - Specify the IPSec policy to be definitely applied on the L2TP connection.
Specify CLID or Remote VPN Gateway	You can specify the IP address of the remote dial-in user or peer ID (should be the same with the ID setting in dial-in type) by checking the box. Enter Peer ISDN number if you select ISDN above. Also, you should further specify the corresponding security methods on the right side. If you uncheck the checkbox, the connection type you select
	above will apply the authentication methods and security methods in the general settings.
User Name	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.



Password	This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
VJ Compression	VJ Compression is used for TCP/IP protocol header compression. This field is applicable when you select PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above.
IKE Authentication Method	This group of fields is applicable for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the IP address of the remote node. The only exception is Digital Signature (X.509) can be set when you select IPSec tunnel either with or without specify the IP address of the remote node. Pre-Shared Key - Check the box of Pre-Shared Key to invoke this function and type in the required characters (1-63) as the pre-shared key. Digital Signature (X.509) –Check the box of Digital Signature to invoke this function and select one predefined Profiles set in the VPN and Remote Access >>IPSec Peer Identity .
IPSec Security Method	 This group of fields is a must for IPSec Tunnels and L2TP with IPSec Policy when you specify the remote node. Medium- Authentication Header (AH) means data will be authenticated, but not be encrypted. By default, this option is active. High- Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) means payload (data) will be encrypted and authenticated. You may select encryption algorithm from Data Encryption Standard (DES), Triple DES (3DES), and AES.
My WAN IP	This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.
Remote Gateway IP	This field is only applicable when you select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP with or without IPSec policy above. The default value is 0.0.0.0, which means the Vigor router will get a remote Gateway PPP IP address from the remote router during the IPCP negotiation phase. If the PPP IP address is fixed by remote side, specify the fixed IP address here. Do not change the default value if you do not select ISDN, PPTP or L2TP.
Remote Network IP/ Remote Network Mask	Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to this Remote Network IP Address/Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. For IPSec, this is the destination clients IDs of phase 2 quick mode.
More	Add a static route to direct all traffic destined to more Remote Network IP Addresses/ Remote Network Mask through the VPN connection. This is usually used when you find there are several subnets behind the remote VPN router.
RIP Direction	The option specifies the direction of RIP (Routing Information Protocol) packets. You can enable/disable one of direction

	here. Herein, we provide four options: TX/RX Both, TX Only, RX Only, and Disable.
From first subnet to remote network, you have to do	If the remote network only allows you to dial in with single IP, please choose NAT , otherwise choose Route .
Change default route to this VPN tunnel	Check this box to change the default route with this VPN tunnel. Be aware that this setting is available only for WAN interface is enabled.

5.9.7 Connection Management

You can find the summary table of all VPN connections. You may disconnect any VPN connection by clicking **Drop** button. You may also aggressively Dial-out by using Dial-out Tool and clicking **Dial** button.

VPN and Remote Access >> Connection Management

Dial-out	Tool				Refre	sh Sec	onds : 10	Refresh	
					✓ Dial]			
VPN Con	nection State	us							
Current F	age: 1					Pa	ige No.	G0 >>	
VPN	Туре	Remote IP	Virtual Network	Tx Pkts	Tx Rate (Bps)	Rx Pkts	Rx Rate (Bps)	UpTime	
					×××××× : C ×××××× : C				1
Dial		Clic	k this buttor	n to exe	ecute dial	l out f	unction.		
Refresh	Seconds		Choose the time for refresh the dial information among 5, 10 and 30.			5, 10,			
Refresh		Clic	Click this button to refresh the whole connection status.						



5.10 Certificate Management

A digital certificate works as an electronic ID, which is issued by a certification authority (CA). It contains information such as your name, a serial number, expiration dates etc., and the digital signature of the certificate-issuing authority so that a recipient can verify that the certificate is real. Here Vigor router support digital certificates conforming to standard X.509.

Any entity wants to utilize digital certificates should first request a certificate issued by a CA server. It should also retrieve certificates of other trusted CA servers so it can authenticate the peer with certificates issued by those trusted CA servers.

Here you can manage generate and manage the local digital certificates, and set trusted CA certificates. Remember to adjust the time of Vigor router before using the certificate so that you can get the correct valid period of certificate.

Below shows the menu items for Certificate Management.



5.10.1 Local Certificate

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Local			View Delete
GENERATE X509 L	IMPORT REFRESH		
			~
			~

Generate

Click this button to open Generate Certificate Request window.

Cartificate	Management >>		Certificate
Certificate	management >>	Local	Certificate

Subject Alternative Name	
Туре	IP Address 🗸
IP	
Subject Name	
Country (C)	
State (ST)	
Location (L)	
Orginization (O)	
Orginization Unit (OU)	
Common Name (CN)	
Email (E)	
Кеу Туре	RSA 🛩
Key Size	1024 Bit 💌

Generate

Type in all the information that the window request. Then click **Generate** again.

Import	Click this button to import a saved file as the certification information.
Refresh	Click this button to refresh the information listed below.
View	Click this button to view the detailed settings for certificate request.

After clicking **Generate**, the generated information will be displayed on the window below:

Certificate Management >> Local Certificate

Name	Subject	Status	Modify
Local /C=TW/ST=HS/O=Draytek/OU=RD/		Requesting	View Delete
GENERATE	IMPORT REFRESH		
X509 Lo	ocal Certificate Request		
MIIBnT EwdEcmi cmF5dG OTS2S2 mASVOR	EGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST CCAQVCAQAwXTELMAkGAIUEBHMCVFcxCZAJ F5GGVrMQswCQYDVQQLEwJSRDEiMCAGCSqG JrLmNvbTCBnzANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOB 2dw1Reltv1HnVwm/MFC0y9x+XEwNKG46jd j7HbNOdYn88p1xRrCPgk8nkbMLdAgb10o; Ep/2020WsCddxh/HzZ3Ys8m60CAwEAAAAA	SIb3DQEJARYTC jQAwgYkCgYEAy GY1LSAvJTduHH c/lsYN/smGb4N MAOGCSqGSIb3D	3VwcG9ydEBk ZELVTVBytix 90z40MWx02G +Pbo4VM01V0
AGNB90 nacBqE sOvJGB	71V44sgXwiWnXHJvdFLDOdwcQO1ZL1XRn+; z1WOchKzESOdyDc8mt1f7k+iO45SeuY7nx; HHwKSkWb1RAZL5xvHjDoMX16czT1ybedZS; ND CERTIFICATE REOUEST	swXvPIOn31JMJ	•

X509 Local Certificate Configuration

5.10.2 Trusted CA Certificate

Trusted CA certificate lists three sets of trusted CA certificate.

Certificate Management >>	Trusted	CA	Certificate
---------------------------	---------	----	-------------

X509 Trusted CA Certificate Configuration

 	View Delete
 	View Delete
 	View Delete

To import a pre-saved trusted CA certificate, please click **IMPORT** to open the following window. Use **Browse...** to find out the saved text file. Then click **Import**. The one you imported will be listed on the Trusted CA Certificate window. Then click **Import** to use the pre-saved file.

Certificate Management >> Trusted CA Certificate

Import X509 Trusted CA Certificate	
Select a trusted CA certificate file.	
Browse.	
Click Import to upload the certification.	
Import Cancel	

For viewing each trusted CA certificate, click **View** to open the certificate detail information window. If you want to delete a CA certificate, choose the one and click **Delete** to remove all the certificate information.

Cer 🧭	tificate Information - Windows Inter	net Explorer	×
🤌 http	://192.168.1.1/doc/XCaCfVi1.htm		<
			^
	Certific	ate Detail Information	
	Certificate Name:	Trusted CA-1	
	Issuer:		
	Subject:		
	Subject Alternative Name:		
	Valid From:		
	Valid To:		
		Close	*

5.10.3 Certificate Backup

Local certificate and Trusted CA certificate for this router can be saved within one file. Please click **Backup** on the following screen to save them. If you want to set encryption password for these certificates, please type characters in both fields of **Encrypt password** and **Confirm password**.

Also, you can use **Restore** to retrieve these two settings to the router whenever you want.

Certificate Ma	nagement >> Certificate Backup
Certificate Bac	ckup / Restoration
Backup	
	Encrypt password:
	Confirm password:
	Click Backup to download certificates to your local PC as a file.
Restoration	
	Select a backup file to restore.
	Browse.,
	Decrypt password:
	Click Restore to upload the file.

5.11 IP PBX

IP PBX (*IP -Private Branch eXchange*) is a private telephone network used within an enterprise. Users of the PBX can share a certain number of outside lines for making telephone calls external to the PBX.

IP PBX integrates the benefits of VoIP and transfers the message from IP phone into the data that can be accepted by traditional PBX through IP network. It is a new platform that enterprises can use data network to deliver voice. Additionally, to move the IP phone set(s), users just need to plug into another network connector. Such thing simplifies the procedure of moving, increasing, changing and deleting phone settings; also it can join with other system such as CALL center to be a multi-functional communication platform. Moreover, it can save large cost in communication for the enterprise.

This menu can assist users to configure most of settings in IP PBX.

Below shows menu items for IP PBX:





5.11.1 Extension

The system allows you to set **100** extension numbers. Please open **IP PBX>>Extension** to get the following pages.

1. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 2. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 3. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 3. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 4. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 5. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 8. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 9. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 9. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SPSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4	
2. SIP4 SIP5 S 95TN1 PSTN2 PSTN1 PSTN2 9. SIP1 SIP2 S 9. PSTN1 PSTN2 9. 9.	v
3. SIP4 SIP5 S SIP4 SIP5 S PSTN1 PSTN2 PSTN4 4. SIP1 SIP2 S SIP4 SIP5 S 4. SIP1 SIP2 S SIP4 SIP5 S 9. SIP1 SIP2 S SIP1 SIP2 S	SIP6
4. SIP4 SIP5 S PSTN1 PSTN2 8. PSTN4 9. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SIP4 SIP	SIP6
8. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SIP4 S	SIP6
8. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SIP4 S	
9 SIP4 SIP5 PSTN1 PSTN2	SIP6
PSTN4	SIP6
10. SIP1 SIP2 SIP4 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP4 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5 SIP5	SIP6

IP PBX >> Extension

There are 100 groups of extension numbers that you can configure. Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> Extension Profile

Internal Phone Exte	nsion Index 1		
Internal Phone Exten	sion Active	◯ Enable	
Extension Number			
User Name			
Authentication			
Password		•••	
E-mail Address			Send a test e-mail
Voice mail Password		•••	
MWI			
Notify User who S	Subscribed	Force Notify User	
Outgoing Call Use			
SIP1 SIP2 S		SIP6	
♥PSTN1 ♥PSTN2	✓PSTN3 ✓PSTN4		
Answer Mode			
No answer after	120 sec then	Keep Ring 🗸 🗸	
Busy then	Do Nothing	*	
Not on-line	Do Nothing	*	

OK Cancel

Internal Phone Extension Click Enable to invoke such profile.

Active	L L
Extension Number	Type the number of extension for such index.
User Name	Type a name for the IP PBX to execute authentication. When an IP phone connects to network, IP PBX will use such name for authentication.
Authentication	Check this box to make the IP PBX executing authentication while the number is dialed.
Password	Type a number for the IP PBX to execute authentication. When an IP phone connects to network, IP PBX will use such password for authentication.
E-mail Address	Type an e-mail address to receive media (voice) file sent by incoming calls. Send a test e-mail: Click this button to send a test e-mail to the mail box you typed here.
Voice Mail Password	Type a password here. When the user wants to listen the voice mail, he/she muse use such password to open it.
MWI (Message Waiting Indicator)	There are two types of MWI for users to choose. Please click the one according to the real application.
	Notify User who Subscribed - The user needs to send out SUBSCRIBE message first. When IPPBX detects new voice message from some extension number or the condition of the voice message is changed, it will transfer "NOTIFY" message to the users within the valid time subscribed.
	Force Notify User- The user does not send out SUBSCRIBE

Force Notify User- The user does not send out SUBSCRIBE message automatically. The IPPBX will deliver "NOTIFY"



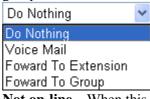
message to the users if there is a new message or the user registers on IPPBX again.

Outgoing Call UseThere are several outside lines (SIP accounts) for you to
specify for such extension. Please check the one(s) you want.
The available boxes listed here will be changed according to
the FXS/FXO module inserted to VigorIPPBX 3510.

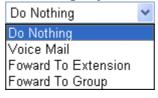
Answer ModeSpecify the way to process incoming phone calls.
No answer after – When the incoming phone call is not
picked up, it will be processed by keeping, forwarding to
certain extension or group. Please specify the waiting time and
determine the way you want to process.



Busy then – When this extension number is busy, you can forward the incoming phone call to other extension number or group.



Not on-line – When this extension number is not online, you can forward the incoming phone call to other extension number of group.



5.11.2 Line Setting

There are six SIP outside lines and one ISDN line provided by this IP PBX device. Users can set them respectively from SIP Trunk and PSTN Trunk.

IP PBX >> Line Setting
Line Setting
<u>SIP Trunk</u>
<u>PSTN Trunk</u>

5.11.2.1 SIP Trunk

This page allows you to set profiles for six SIP outside lines at one time.

I	Р	P	B	х	>>	S	Р	T	ru	n	k	Li	s	
			_	~		U			ч		· ·	_	-	

5: 5 💌 I	<u>Refresh</u>
e Trunk Number	Status
001	-
002	-
003	-
004	-
005	-
006	-
	006 uccess registered on SI

-: Fail to register on SIP server

Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> SIP Trunk List

SIP Trunk Index 1	
Profile Name	(11 char max.)
Register via	None 💌
SIP Local Port	5070
Domain/Reallm	(63 char max.)
Proxy	(63 char max.)
Proxy Port	5060 (63 char max.)
Display Name	(23 char max.)
Account Number/Name	(63 char max.)
Authentication ID	(63 char max.)
Password	(63 char max.)
Expiry Time	1 hour 💙 3600 sec
Trunk number	001 (3 char max.)
Office hours answer mode	Auto Attendant
Non-Office hours answer mode	Auto Attendant
Note:SIP Local Port can not be equal to F	PBX Proxy Port.
	OK Cancel



Profile Name	Assign a name for this profile for identifying. You can type similar name with the domain. For example, if the domain name is <i>draytel.org</i> , then you might set <i>draytel-1</i> in this field.
Register via	If you want to make VoIP call without register personal information, please choose None and check the box to achieve the goal. Some SIP server allows user to use VoIP function without registering. Choosing Auto is recommended.
SIP Port	Set the port number for sending/receiving SIP message for building a session. The default value is 6060. Your peer must set the same value in his/her Registrar.
Domain/Realm	Set the domain name or IP address of the SIP Registrar server.
Proxy	Set domain name or IP address of SIP proxy server. By the time you can type :port number after the domain name to specify that port as the destination of data transmission (e.g., nat.draytel.org:5065)
Proxy Port	Set port number for the proxy server.
Display Name	The caller-ID that you want to be displayed on your friend's screen.
Account Number/Name	Enter your account name of SIP Address, e.g. every text before @
Authentication ID	Check the box to invoke this function and enter the name or number used for SIP Authorization with SIP Registrar. If this setting value is the same as Account Name, it is not necessary for you to check the box and set any value in this field.
Password	The password provided to you when you registered with a SIP service.
Expiry Time	It is the time duration that your SIP Registrar server keeps your registration record. Before the time expires, the router will send another register request to SIP Registrar again.
Trunk Number	There are two ways to dial outside lines for an extension number. First, dial a short number and wait for a while. When dial tone appears, please dial the real outside line number. Second, dial a short number and then the real outside line number without waiting for dial tone. The short number is defined here as Trunk Number.
Office hours answer mode	Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly. Auto Attendant Foward To Extension Foward To Group
Non-office hours answer mode	Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly.

Auto Attendant	*
Auto Attendant	
Foward To Extension	
Foward To Group	

5.11.2.2 PSTN Trunk

This page allows you to set profiles for PSTN outside lines at one time.

IP PBX >> PSTN Trunk List

Index	Trunk Number	Active
<u>1.</u>	905	v
<u>2.</u>	906	v
<u>3.</u>	907	v
4.	908	v

Cancel

Please click any number under Index to set detailed configuration.

IP PBX >> PSTN Trunk List

Phone Extension Active	💿 Enable 🛛 Disable
Trunk Number	905 (7 char max.)
Manual Disconnection	Disconnect
PIN Code	
PIN Code Mode:	🔘 Enable 🛛 💿 Disable
Off-Net PIN Code ID:	0000
On-Net PIN Code ID:	0000
nswer Mode	
Office hours answer mode	Auto Attendant
Non-Office hours answer mode	Auto Attendant
Outgoing Call Use	
SIP1 SIP2 SIP3 SIP4 SIP5 SIP6	

Phone Extension Active	Click Enable to invoke this setting.
Trunk Number	The default setting is 905. Please modify it to meet the request for your PSTN environment.
Manual Disconnection	To disconnect the PSTN trunk, simply click the Disconnect button. The PSTN phone call will be disconnected immediately.
PIN Code Mode	Click Enable to invoke this setting.



Off-Net PIN Code ID	Type the PIN code number to make off-net call to PSTN trunk.
On-Net PIN Code ID	Type the PIN code number to make on-net call to PSTN trunk.
Office hours answer mode	Set the answering mode for such outside line in office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly. Auto Attendant Foward To Extension Foward To Group
Non-office hours answer mode	Set the answering mode for such outside line in non-office time. You can specify it with Auto Attendant (AA), or forward it to any Extension or Group directly. Auto Attendant Foward To Extension Foward To Group
Outgoing Call Use	There are several outside lines (SIP accounts) for you to specify for such extension. Please check the one(s) you want. The available boxes listed here will be changed according to the FXS/FXO module inserted to VigorIPPBX 3510.

5.11.3 Dial Plan

IP PBX >> Dial Plan

Dial Plan Configuration	
<u>Digit Map</u>	
<u>Call Barring</u>	

5.11.3.1 Digit Map

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

For the convenience of user, this page allows users to edit prefix number for the SIP account with adding number, stripping number or replacing number. It is used to help user having a quick and easy way to dial out through VoIP interface.

_	it Map S	-					
ŧ	Enable	Prefix Number	Mode	OP Number	Min Len	Max Len	Interface
1		886	None 🔽	03	0	0	*
2			None Add		0	0	~
3			Strip Replace		0	0	~
ł			None 🗸		0	0	~
5			None 💉		0	0	~
5			None		0	0	×
7			None 💉		0	0	~
3			None 👻		0	0	~
9			None 🗸		0	0	~

13		None	¥.	0	0	
14		None	*	0	0	×
15		None	~	0	0	~
16		None	~	0	0	×
17		None	~	0	0	*
18		None	~	0	0	×
19		None	~	0	0	*
20		None	~	0	0	×

Note: Min Len and Max Len should be between 0~25.

One step dial for Turnk line:

1. Set mode to strip.

2. Let OP number and prefix number are the same.

3. Set a suitable range for length.

4. Select a specific interface.

For example, op number and prefix are "1" and interface is VoiP1. When a extension dial "12345", PBX will dial "2345" by VoIP1.

OK Cancel

Enable	Check this box to invoke this setting.
Prefix Number	The phone number set here is used to add, strip, or replace the OP number.
Mode	None - No action. Add - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be added with the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. Strip - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be deleted by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. For example, the OP number of 886 will be deleted completely for the prefix number is set with 886. Replace - When you choose this mode, the OP number will be replaced by the prefix number for calling out through the specific VoIP interface. For example, if the OP number is set with 03, it will be replaced by 8863 (prefix number). Dial number of "031111111" will be changed to "8863111111" and sent to SIP server. Mode Replace None Add Strip Replace
OP Number	The front number you type here is the first part of the account number that you want to execute special function (according to the chosen mode) by using the prefix number.
Min Len	Set the minimal length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings. Take the above picture (Prefix Table Setup web page) as an example, if the dial number is between 7 and 9, that number can apply the prefix number settings here.
Max Len	Set the maximum length of the dial number for applying the prefix number settings.



Interface

Choose the one that you want to enable the prefix number settings from the saved SIP accounts. Please set up one SIP account first to make this interface available.

5.11.3.2 Call Barring

Call barring is used to block phone calls coming from the one that is not welcomed.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Index	Call Direction	Barring Type	Barring Number/URL/URI	Interface	Schedule	Status
<u>1.</u>						х
<u>2.</u>						х
<u>3.</u>						х
<u>4.</u>						х
<u>5.</u>						х
<u>6.</u>						х
<u>7.</u>						х
<u>8.</u>						х
<u>9.</u>						х
<u>10.</u>						×

Advanced: <u>Block Anonymous</u> <u>Block Unknown Domain</u>

Click any index number to display the dial plan setup page.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Index No. 1					
✓ Enable					
Call Direction	IN 💌				
Barring Type	Specific URI/URL 💌				
Specific URI/URL					
Interface	All 💌				
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup	,,,				

Enable

Click this to enable this entry.

OK]

Call Direction

Determine the direction for the phone call, IN – incoming call,

OUT-outgoing call, IN & OUT - both incoming and outgoing

Cancel



Barring Type	Determine the type of the VoIP phone call, URI/URL or number. It will bring out different setting options. Specific URI/URL Specific URI/URL Specific Number		
Specific Number/Specific URI/URL	This field will be changed based on the type you selected for barring Type. Please type numbers or URI/URL		
Interface	"All" means all the phone calls will be blocked with such mechanism.		
Index (1-15) in Schedule	Enter the index of schedule profiles to control the call barring according to the preconfigured schedules. Refer to section Application>> Schedule for detailed configuration.		

Additionally, you can set advanced settings for call barring such as **Block Anonymous** or **Block Unknown Domain**. Simply click the relational links to open the web page.

For **Block Anonymous** – this function can block the incoming calls without caller ID on the interface specified in the following window. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup

Call Barring Block Anonymous						
	Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup					
Note:Bloc	Note:Block the incoming calls which do not have the caller ID.					
		OK Cancel				

For **Block Unknown Domain** – this function can block incoming calls from unrecognized domain that is not specified in SIP accounts. Such controlling also can be done based on preconfigured schedules.

IP PBX >> DialPlan Setup					
Call Barring Block Unknown Domain					
🗹 Enable					
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup,,,					
Note: If the domain of the incoming call is different from the domain found in SIP accounts, the call should be blocked.					
OK Cancel					

5.11.4 PBX System

This page allows you to set relational (advanced) settings for IP PBX device.



IP PBX >> PBX System

SIP Proxy Setting	
Hunt Group	
Voice Mail Configuration	
Office Hours	
Auto Attendant Wizard	
Prompt Maintenance	
Tone Setting	
Phone Setting	

5.11.4.1 SIP Proxy Setting

To make the IP phone to be registered in IP PBX device successfully, it is necessary for the users to configure settings in this page.

IP PBX >> PBX System

SIP Proxy Setting	
SIP Local Port	5060
SIP Proxy Realm	PBX.com
RTP Local Port Start	15050
RTP Local Port End	20000

OK Cancel

SIP Local Port	Set a port number as SIP local port. The default setting is 5060.
SIP Proxy Realm	Type SIP service domain name. In full SIP URI, such is the part after @ symbol.
RTP Local Port Start/ RTP Local Port End	If your VoIP service provider gave you such information, please type the port number for RTP traffic. Otherwise, keep the default setting. For one port number used, type the same port number in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields. To set a range for port numbers type different port numbers in RTP Local Port Start and RTP Local Port End fields.

5.11.4.2 Hunt Group

This page allows you to make several extension numbers under certain group. Thus, when a phone call incomes, all the extension numbers under such group will ring.



IP PBX >> PBX System

1.1.		<u>_</u> .		
пι	ar i c	- 61	ou	U.

Index	Group Name	Group Extension	Hunt List (Max 20 Extension)
<u>1.</u>			
<u>2.</u>			
<u>3.</u>			
<u>4.</u>			
<u>5.</u>			
<u>6.</u>			
<u>7.</u>			
<u>8.</u>			
<u>9.</u>			
<u>10.</u>			

Index

You can set 10 groups for using in different conditions. Simply click the number under Index to specify detailed information.

Group Name	Display the name of such group.
Group Extension	Display the extension number of such group.
Hunt List	Display the members inside the group.

Click any index number to display the hunt group setup page.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Hunt Groups Index 1		
Hunt Group Name]
Hunt Group Extension		
Hunt Rule	Simultaneously 💌	а
Hunt List (Maximum Of Group Men	nber:20)	
Available		Chosen
90 91		
92 93	Add »	
94 95 96	Add All	
97 98	Remove «	
99 100 101 - 901	Remove All	
102 - 902 103 - 903	Move Up	
104 - 904 105 - 905 106 - 906	Move Down	
107 - 907 108 - 908		

OK Cancel

Hunt Group Name
Hunt Group Extension
Hunt Rule

Type suitable name for such group.

Type extension number for such group.

Use the drop down menu to choose rule for such group. **Simultaneously** – Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring while receiving incoming calls.

	Sequentially - Choose such rule can make all the phones in the groups ring one by one while receiving incoming calls.
Add>>	Click this button to move the selected item in Available area to Chosen area.
Add All	Click this button to move all of the items in Available area to Chosen area.
Remove<<	Click this button to move the selected item in Chosen area to Available area.
Remove All	Click this button to clear all of the selections in Chosen area.
Move Up	Click this button to move the selected item to the upper place.
Move Down	Click this button to move the selected item to the lower place.

5.11.4.3 Voice Mail Configuration

This page allows users to set actions for voices mails.

IP PBX >> PBX System

Voice Mail Configuration		
Extension for checking messages	999	(20 ~ 65535)
Attach recordings to E-mail		
Send message by E-mail only		
Day for keeping voice mail	3	(1~7)
Maximum messages time	30 Sec 💌	
Mail Voice-Mail Setup		
SMTP Server		
Authentication		
User Name		
Password		
	OK Cancel]

Extension for checking messages	The number specified here is used for the user to listen personal voice mail from IP PBX device.	
Attach recordings to e-mail	IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call if you check this box. Send message through E-mail - IP PBX can send the voice mail to the specified e-mail address for the incoming call directly and delete the temporary file in IP PBX if you check this box.	
Days for keeping voice mail	Type the days for keeping each voice mail.	
Maximum message time	Type the recording length for each voice mail.	
SMTP Server	Type IP address or domain name for the server specified for receiving voice messages.	
Authentication	Check this box to authenticate the mail server.	
User Name	Type a name for IP PBX to authenticate the mail server automatically while connecting.	
Password	Type a password for IP PBX to authenticate the mail server automatically while connecting.	



5.11.4.4 Office Hours

You can set ten groups of office hours including starting point, ending point on duty day(s).

IP PBX >> PBX System

Office H	Hours			
Index	Enable	Office Hour Start (HHMM)	Office Hour End (HHMM)	Weekdays
1	✓	02 💌 25 💌	04 💌 25 💌	🗹 Sun 🗌 Mon 🗋 Tue 🗹 Wed 🗌 Thu 🗌 Fri 🗌 Sat
2		00 🕶 00 💌	00 🕶 00 🛩	Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
З		00 🕶 00 🛩	00 🕶 00 🛩	🗌 Sun 🗌 Mon 📄 Tue 🗌 Wed 🗌 Thu 🗌 Fri 🗌 Sat
4		00 🕶 00 💌	00 🕶 00 🛩	Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
5		00 🕶 00 🛩	00 🕶 00 🛩	🗌 Sun 🗌 Mon 📄 Tue 🗌 Wed 🗌 Thu 🗌 Fri 🗌 Sat
6		00 🕶 00 💌	00 🕶 00 🛩	Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
7		00 🕶 00 🛩	00 🕶 00 🕶	🗌 Sun 🗌 Mon 📄 Tue 🗌 Wed 📄 Thu 📄 Fri 🗌 Sat
8		00 🔽 00 🔽	00 🕶 00 🛩	Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat
9		00 🗸 00 🗸	00 🕶 00 🛩	🗌 Sun 🗌 Mon 📄 Tue 🗌 Wed 🗌 Thu 🗌 Fri 🗌 Sat
10		00 🖌 00 🔽	00 🗸 00 🗸	Sun Mon Tue Wed Thu Fri Sat

Holiday Setting

Month	Date
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	
11	
12	

Office Hour Start	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the starting point.
Office Hour End	Use the drop down menu to choose the time as the ending point.
Weekdays	Check the day(s) to apply the office hour for that index.
Date	Specify date(s) for applying the office hour settings in holiday, for example, type 2,4 6 & 7 in the field of Date for Month 1. It means January 2,4,6 & 7 will apply the office hour settings configured in this page.

Clear

Cancel

OK

5.11.4.5 Auto Attendant Wizard

The first page is configured for phone calls in office hours.

IP PBX >> PBX System

		Key	Action
		0	Ring Receptionist 1 💌
		1	Plays Prompt : Prompt 7
		2	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
	Auto Attendant answers the	3	Ring Receptionist 👻 1 👻
Caller calls Auto Attendant call,plays office hours greeting (prompt 5),and	4	Ring Receptionist 💌 1 💌	
	5	Ring Receptionist 💌 1 💌	
	waits for caller input	6	Ring Receptionist 👻 1 💌
		7	Ring Receptionist 💌 1 💌
		8	Ring Receptionist 💌 1 💌
		9	Ring Receptionist 👻 1 👻
		<u>)</u>	,. <u> </u>

Click Next. The second page is configured for phone calls in non-office hours.

IP PBX >> PBX System

		Key	Action
		0	Ring Receptionist 1 💌
		1	Plays Prompt : Prompt 7
		2	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
	Auto Attendant answers the	3	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
Caller calls	call,plays non- office hours	4	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
Auto Attendant	greeting (prompt 6), and	5	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
	waits for caller input	6	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
	input	7	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
		8	Ring Receptionist 💙 1 💙
		9	Ring Receptionist 👻 1 👻
ng Receptionist	< Back Only the	Next > exter	Cancel Science Cancel Science Cancel Cancel Science
ays Prompt	Audio fi	e wil	l be played automatically.
Jo - Tompe			enu 1 contains Ring Receptionist / Pl
ey 2-9			

Auto Attendant Wizard - Non-Office Hours



or [Prompt 1~ Prompt 10, audio files] or [Group Name (ex. Sales, RD2)]. It will be changed according to drop down menu 1.

Finally, the following window will appear.

IP PBX >> PBX System

You can record the office hours and non-office hour greetings or other prompts.	
Prompt 5 is used as office hours greeting. Prompt 6 is used as non-office hours greeting.	
Prompt 7 is used as specific purposes.	

5.11.4.6 Prompt Maintenance

IP PBX >> PBX System

The IP PBX system provides several audio files for users to choose for playing. Moreover, users can upload other audio files from USB storage or hard disk or others to make the IP PBX system playing. Users can record audio files and upload to router or download to PC. However, the file format of the audio file must follow the rule stated on the web page. Users can record the audio files through a phone set connected to the router or use audio record program on PC.

Prompt Maintenance Download Prompt G711 01 Upload Browse.. Restore



- / -						
User	r Prompt File	: v3500pbx	g711_user	promptXX.wav	; XX:	01~10;

Supported wav file format, the length of time is 75 sec at most.

Codec	Channels	Sample rate	Bits
Linear PCM	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	16
A-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8
u-law g711	Stereo, Mono	8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k	8

Download

The audio file can be saved with IVR file format or WAV file format. In general, it will be saved in the router's memory after you record it. To back up the audio file(s) (saved in FLASH of the router) to your computer, please choose the one you want from the drop-down menu and click **Back Up**.



Download	
Prompt G711 01	🗸 🛛 Bac
Prompt G711 01	
Prompt G711 02 Prompt G711 03 Prompt G711 04 Prompt G711 05 Prompt G711 06 Prompt G711 07 Prompt G711 08	ows a ile: v2
Prompt G711 09 Prompt G711 10 Prompt G729 01 Prompt G729 02 Prompt G729 03 Prompt G729 04 Prompt G729 05 Prompt G729 05 Prompt G729 09 Prompt G729 09 Prompt G729 10 System Prompt System Prompt G729	v282

Prompt Maintenance

Prompt 1 to prompt 10 will be used for user-defined audio files (file format must be .WAV). System Prompt file is provided by router firmware.

Upload	System Prompt file is provided by router firmware. To use such audio file, you have to upload it to flash memory of the router after finishing firmware update. Click this Browse button to browse and choose other audio files.
Restore	Click this button to save the file to the router. Next time, the audio file will be played in IP PBX system.

Upload prompts to your router

You can modify and customize the default system prompt by using the following steps.

Please follow the steps below to upload System Prompt to your router:

- 1. Please use *DOS-BOX FTP client* (Windows built-in FTP client utility) to login VigorIPPBX FTP server.
- 2. Press Enter to pass authentication.
- 3. Type **put v3510_sysprompt.ivr**.
- 4. Wait for a while. The message of **226 System prompts file has been uploaded successfully** will appear
- 5. Type put v3510_g729_sysprompt.ivr.
- 6. Wait for a while. The message of **226 System prompts G7.729 file has been uploaded successfully** will appear
- 7. Type **quit** to close FTP client. **221 Goodbye! Router will be reboot now** will appear and the router will reboot.

Please follow the steps below to upload G.729 user Prompts to your router:



- 1. Please use *DOS-BOX FTP client* (Windows built-in FTP client utility) to login VigorIPPBX FTP server.
- 2. Press Enter to pass authentication.
- 3. Type put v3510_g729_userprompt.ivr.
- 4. Wait for a while. The message of **226 user prompts G.729 file has been uploaded successfully** will appear.
- 5. Type **quit** to close FTP client. **221 Goodbye! Router will be reboot now** will appear and the router will reboot.

Please follow the steps below to download G.729 user Prompts to your computer:

- 1. Please use *DOS-BOX FTP client* (Windows built-in FTP client utility) to login VigorIPPBX FTP server.
- 2. Press Enter to pass authentication.
- 3. Type get v3510_g729_userprompt.ivr.
- 4. Wait for a while. The message of **226 File sent OK** will appear.
- 5. Type **quit** to close FTP client.

5.11.4.7 Tone Setting

Tone setting is provided for fitting the telecommunication custom for the local area of the router installed. Wrong tone setting might cause inconvenience for users. To set the sound pattern of the phone set, simply choose a proper region to let the system find out the preset tone settings and caller ID type automatically. Or you can adjust tone settings manually if you choose User Defined. TOn1, TOff1, TOn2 and TOff2 mean the cadence of the tone pattern. TOn1 and TOn2 represent sound-on; TOff1 and TOff2 represent the sound-off.

IP PBX >> Tone

Region UK	~		Caller ID Ty	pe ETSI	~	
	Low Frequency (Hz)	High Frequency (Hz)	TOn1 (10msec)	TOff1 (10msec)	TOn2 (10msec)	TOff2 (10msec)
Dial tone	350	440	500	0	0	0
Ringing tone	440	480	0	0	200	400
Busy tone	480	620	0	0	50	50
Congestion tone	480	620	0	0	25	25

D	•	
к	egion	
	CLIVII	

Select the proper region which you are located. The common settings of **Caller ID Type**, **Dial tone**, **Ringing tone**, **Busy tone** and **Congestion tone** will be shown automatically on the page. If you cannot find out a suitable one, please choose **User Defined** and fill out the corresponding values for dial tone, ringing tone, busy tone, congestion tone by yourself for VoIP phone.

Tone Settings

Region	UK	~	
.	User Defined		
	Canada,USA		
	Netherlands		Fr∈
	France		FIE
	UK		_
Dial tone	Denmark		35 0
<u> </u>	Norway		
Ringing to	Poland		440
Busy tone	Germany		480
	Australia		400
Congestio	Singapore		480
	Japan		L
	China		
	Finland		
	Hong Kong		
	Taiwan		

Also, you can specify each field for your necessity. It is



recommended for you to use the default settings for VoIP communication.

Caller ID TypeSelect the caller ID type for setting Dial tone, Ringing tone,
Busy tone and Congestion tone respectively.

Caller ID Type

ETSI	*
North America	
JAPAN	
DTMF	

5.11.4.8 Phone Setting

This page allows user to set phone settings for FXS module.

```
IP PBX >> PBX System
```

IP PBX >> PBX System

Phone	Lict
FIIOIIE	LISU

Index	Туре	Call Feature	Extension Number	DTMF Relay	Codec
1	FXS	CW,	901	OutBand	G.729A/B
<u>2</u>	FXS	CW,	902	OutBand	G.729A/B
<u>3</u>	FXS	CW,	903	OutBand	G.729A/B
<u>4</u>	FXS	CW,	904	OutBand	G.729A/B

Click any index number link to open the following page for configuration.

Call Feature			Phone Extension Active	💿 Enable 🛛 🔘 Disable
Hotline			Extension Number	901
Call Waiting			E-mail Address	
FAX Mode	Transparent	*		Send a test e-mail
FAX Bypass Codec	G.711U(PCMU) -64kb		Voice mail Password	
FAX Bypass Codec Rate			DTMF	
			DTMF Mode	OutBand(RFC2833)
			Codec	
			Prefer Codec	G.729A/B (8Kbps) 🔽
				Single Codec
			Code Rate	20ms 🛩
			Codec VAD	
			Outgoing Call Use	
			SIP1 SIP2 SIP3	SIP4 SIP5 SIP6
			♥PSTN1 ♥PSTN2 ♥F	STN3 PSTN4
			Answer Mode	
			No answer after	120 sec then
			Keep Ring 🛛 👻	
			Busy then	
			Do Nothing 🛛 🗸	

Hotline

Check the box to enable it. Type in the SIP URL in the field for dialing automatically when you pick up the phone set.

Dray Tek

Call Waiting	appear to tell the user new j	is function. A notice sound will phone call is waiting for your to pick up the waiting phone call.
FAX Mode	The FAX function mode. T	here are several options:
	Transparent Transparent T.38 Relay Bypass(Proprietary Mode) Bypass(Normal Mode)	
	fax relay and no Codec cha <i>T.38 Relay:</i> Using T.38 Fax <i>Bypass:</i> Once FAX is detect switch to a high bit rate typ sure FAX can transmit succo If this option is selected, the	x Relay. This is the default value. eted, the Codec will automatically e (G.711a/u or G.726) to make
FAX Bypass Codec	Select one option to be app Bypass mode.	lied if FAX mode is configured as
	FAX Mode	Bypass(Proprietary Mode) 🐱
	FAX Bypass Codec	G.711U(PCMU) -64kbps ⊻
	FAX Bypass Codec Rate	G.711U(PCMU) -64kbps G.711A(PCMU) -64kbps G.726 -32kbps
FAX Bypass Code Rate	configured as Bypass mode) to be applied if FAX mode is e. The stability for the faxing result te 20ms is higher than 40ms.
	FAX Bypass Codec	G.711U(PCMU) -64kbps ⊻
	FAX Bypass Codec Rate	20ms 20ms 40ms
Phone Extension Active	Click Enable to invoke this box, the extension number	s function. If you do not check this set here will not work.
Extension Number	Type the number of extensi The default number is 901.	on for such index.
E-mail Address	user to check and listen. Send a test e-mail –Make a specified in this page. Pleas	he specified e-mail address for the a simple test for the e-mail address be assign the mail address first and a test for verify the mail address is
Voice mail Password	Type a password here. Whe mail, he/she muse use such	en the user wants to listen the voice password to open it.



DTMF DTMF Mode – There are four DTMF modes for you to choose.

InBand - Choose this one then the Vigor will send the DTMF tone as audio directly when you press the keypad on the phone **OutBand** - Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the keypad number you pressed and transform it to digital form then send to the other side; the receiver will generate the tone according to the digital form it receive. This function is very useful when the network traffic congestion occurs and it still can remain the accuracy of DTMF tone.

SIP INFO- Choose this one then the Vigor will capture the DTMF tone and transfer it into SIP form. Then it will be sent to the remote end with SIP message.

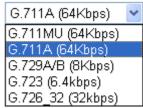
DTMF mode

InBand	*
InBand	
OutBand (RFC2833)	
SIP INFO (cisco format)	
SIP INFO (nortel format)	

Prefer Codec - Select one of five codecs as the default for your VoIP calls. The codec used for each call will be negotiated with the peer party before each session, and so may not be your default choice. The default codec is G.729A/B; it occupies little bandwidth while maintaining good voice quality.

If your upstream speed is only 64Kbps, do not use G.711 codec. It is better for you to have at least 256Kbps upstream if you would like to use G.711.

Prefer Codec



Single Codec – If the box is checked, only the selected Codec will be applied.

Code Rate – The amount of data contained in a single packet. The default value is 20 ms, which means the data packet will contain 20 ms voice information.



Codec VAD – This function can detect if the voice on both sides is active or not. If not, the router will do something to save the bandwidth for other using. Check it to invoke this function.

Outgoing Call Use There are several outside lines (SIP accounts) for you to specify for such extension. Please check the one(s) you want.

Codec

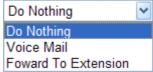


The available boxes listed here will be changed according to the FXS/FXO module inserted to VigorIPPBX 3510.

Answer ModeSpecify the way to process incoming phone calls.
No answer after – When the incoming phone call is not
picked up, it will be processed by keeping, forwarding to
certain extension. Please specify the waiting time and
determine the way you want to process.
No answer after



 ${\bf Busy\ then}$ – When this extension number is busy, you can forward the incoming phone call to other extension number. Busy then





5.11.5 PBX Status

P PBX >> PBX Statu		
PBX Status		
	Call Detail Records	
	Extension Monitor	

5.11.5.1 Call Detail Records

This page displays call records of IP PBX such as failed call, successful call, no-answer call, date of the call and the duration of each call, and so on. Each page will display 50 records.

all Detail Records		Refresh S	Seconds: 10 💌	Refres	
Index	<u>Date</u> ❤	<u>From</u>	<u>To</u>	<u>Result</u>	Duration
1					
2					
3					
4					
5					
6					
7					
8					
9					
10					
11					
10					
38					
39					
40					
41					
42					
43					
44					
45					
46					
47					
48					
49					
50					

IP PBX >> PBX Status

Refresh

Click it to reload the page.

5.11.5.2 Extension Monitor

This page displays owner's name, IP address, status and peer ID for each extension number.

Dray Tek

IP PBX >> PBX Status

xtension Monitor		Refresh S	Refresh Seconds: 10 💌		
Index	Name	Extension	IP	Status	Peer ID
1				Offline	
2				Offline	
3				Offline	
4				Offline	
5				Offline	
6				Offline	
7				Offline	
8				Offline	
9				Offline	
10				Offline	
< <u>1-10 11</u>	-20 21-30 31-40	41-50 51-60 6	<u>1-70 71-80 81-90 </u>	<u>91-100 101-108</u>	>> <u>Next</u> >

Refresh

Click it to reload the page.

5.12 System Maintenance

For the system setup, there are several items that you have to know the way of configuration: Status, Administrator Password, Configuration Backup, Syslog, Time setup, Reboot System, Firmware Upgrade.

Below shows the menu items for System Maintenance.



5.12.1 System Status

The **System Status** provides basic network settings of Vigor router. It includes LAN and WAN interface information. Also, you could get the current running firmware version or firmware related information from this presentation.



System Status

Firmware Version : 3.5.0_RC		: Vigor3510 PBX : 3.5.0_RC4 : Aug 5 2009 17:22:30		
		LAN		WAN 1
MAC Addre	SS	: 00-50-7F-00-00-00	Link Status	: Connected
1st IP Addı	ress	: 192.168.1.1	MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-00-00-01
1st Subnet	t Mask	: 255.255.255.0	Connection	: DHCP Client
DHCP Serv	er	: Yes	IP Address	: 192.168.5.20
DNS		: 168.95.1.1	Default Gateway	: 192.168.5.1
	SI	P Trunk		WAN 2
Index	Profile	e Status	Link Status	: Disconnected
1.			MAC Address	: 00-50-7F-00-00-02
2.			Connection	:
3.			IP Address	:
4.			Default Gateway	:
5.				
6.				

Model Name	Display the model name of the router.
Firmware Version	Display the firmware version of the router.
Build Date/Time	Display the date and time of the current firmware build.
LAN	
MAC Address	Display the MAC address of the LAN Interface.
1 st IP Address	Display the IP address of the LAN interface.
1 st Subnet Mask	Display the subnet mask address of the LAN interface.
DHCP Server	Display the current status of DHCP server of the LAN interface.
DNS	Display the assigned IP address of the primary DNS.
WAN	
Link Status	Display current connection status.
MAC Address	Display the MAC address of the WAN Interface.
Connection	Display the connection type.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the WAN interface.
Default Gateway	Display the assigned IP address of the default gateway.
SIP Trunk	
Index/Profile/Status	Display current status for SIP profiles.

5.12.2 TR-069

This device supports TR-069 standard. It is very convenient for an administrator to manage a TR-069 device through an Auto Configuration Server, e.g., VigorACS.

Account opt onthings	, setting
ACS and CPE Settings	
ACS Server	
URL	
Username	
Password	
CPE Client	
🔘 Enable 💿 Disable	
URL	http://192.168.5.20:8069/cwm/CRN.html
Port	8069
Username	vigor
Password	
Periodic Inform Settings	
Disable	
Enable	
Interval Time	900 second(s)
	ОК
	<u> </u>
ACS Server	URL/Username/Password – Such data must be typed according to the ACS (Auto Configuration Server) you wa to link. Please refer to Auto Configuration Server user's manual for detailed information.
CPE Client	It is not necessary for you to type them. Such information useful for Auto Configuration Server. Enable/Disable – Sometimes, port conflict might be occurred. To solve such problem, you might want to chang port number for CPE. Please click Enable and change the port number.
Periodic Inform Settings	The default setting is Enable . Please set interval time or schedule time for the router to send notification to CPE. C click Disable to close the mechanism of notification.



5.12.3 Administrator Password

This page allows you to set new password.

System Maintenance >> Administrator Password Setup

nistrator Passw	ord		
Old	Password		
New	/ Password		
Con	firm Password		

Old Password	Type in the old password. The factory default setting for password is blank.
New Password	Type in new password in this filed.
Confirm Password	Type in the new password again.

When you click OK, the login window will appear. Please use the new password to access into the web configurator again.

5.12.4 Configuration Backup

Backup the Configuration

Follow the steps below to backup your configuration.

System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

1. Go to **System Maintenance** >> **Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.

-					
Configuration Backup / Restoration					
Restoration					
	Select a configuration file.				
	Browse.,				
	Click Restore to upload the file.				
Backup					
	Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file. Backup Cancel				

2. Click **Backup** button to get into the following dialog. Click **Save** button to open another dialog for saving configuration as a file.





3. In **Save As** dialog, the default filename is **config.cfg**. You could give it another name by yourself.

Save As						? 🗙
Save in:	🞯 Desktop		*	GØ	1	•
My Recent Documents Desktop My Documents	My Documen My Computer My Network I Annex A Annex A MWSnap300 TeleDanmark Tools Config V2k2_232_cc V2k6_250_cc	Places e				
	File name:	config			*	Save
My Network	Save as type:	Configuration file			~	Cancel

4. Click **Save** button, the configuration will download automatically to your computer as a file named **config.cfg**.

The above example is using **Windows** platform for demonstrating examples. The **Mac** or **Linux** platform will appear different windows, but the backup function is still available.

Note: Backup for Certification must be done independently. The Configuration Backup does not include information of Certificate.

Restore Configuration

1. Go to **System Maintenance** >> **Configuration Backup**. The following windows will be popped-up, as shown below.



System Maintenance >> Configuration Backup

Configuration Restoration	Backup / Restoration
	Select a configuration file.
	Browse.
	Click Restore to upload the file.
	Restore
Backup	
	Click Backup to download current running configurations as a file.
	Backup Cancel

- 2. Click **Browse** button to choose the correct configuration file for uploading to the router.
- 3. Click **Restore** button and wait for few seconds, the following picture will tell you that the restoration procedure is successful.

5.12.5 Syslog/Mail Alert

SysLog function is provided for users to monitor router. There is no bother to directly get into the Web Configurator of the router or borrow debug equipments.

```
System Maintenance >> SysLog / Mail Alert Setup
```

SysLog Access Setup		Mail Alert Setup			
🗹 Enable		🗹 Enable	Send a test e-mail		
Server IP Address		SMTP Server			
Destination Port	14	Mail To			
Enable syslog message:		Return-Path			
🗹 Firewall Log		Authentication			
🗹 VPN Log		User Name			
🗹 User Access Log		Password			
🗹 Call Log		Enable E-Mail Alert:			
🗹 WAN Log		🔲 DoS Attack			
🗹 Router/DSL informati	วท	IM-P2P			
	ОК С	Cancel			
Enable (Syslog Access) Check "	Enable " to activate function of syslog.			
yslog Server IP	The IP a	address of the Syslog server.			
Destination Port	Assign a	a port for the Syslog protocol.			
Enable syslog message	correspo	he box listed on this wording message of fire AN, Router/DSL info	ewall, VPN, User Acc		

Check "Enable" to activate function of mail alert.

Make a simple test for the e-mail address specified in this page. Please assign the mail address first and click this button to execute a test for verify the mail address is available or not.

The IP address of the SMTP server.

SMTP Server

Enable (Alert Setup...)

Send a test e-mail



Mail To	Assign a mail address for sending mails out.
Return-Path	Assign an e-mail address of another mailbox to accept all returned messages if fatal problems occur at the recipient mailbox. The e-mail address typed here also acts as the Sender address while Vigor sends out the alert e-mails.
Authentication	Check this box to activate this function while using e-mail application.
User Name	Type the user name for authentication.
Password	Type the password for authentication.
Enable E-mail Alert	Check the box to send alert message to the e-mail box while the modem detecting the item(s) you specify here.

Click **OK** to save these settings.

For viewing the Syslog, please do the following:

- 1. Just set your monitor PC's IP address in the field of Server IP Address
- 2. Install the Router Tools in the **Utility** within provided CD. After installation, click on the **Router Tools>>Syslog** from program menu.



3. From the Syslog screen, select the router you want to monitor. Be reminded that in **Network Information**, select the network adapter used to connect to the router. Otherwise, you won't succeed in retrieving information from the router.

ontrols N Status TX Pac	kets	192.168.1.1 Vigor series RX Packets 1470		US ateway IP (Fixed) WAN IP (Fixed)	TX Packets 0 RX Packets 0 0	TX Rate 0 RX Rate 0
On Line Routers	Mask	ess Log Call Log	WAN Log Others Host Name: NIC Description:	vivian	rt State	er - Packet S(🗸
192.168.1.1	255.255.2	00-50-7F-54-6	NIC Information MAC Address: IP Address: Subnet Mask:	00-11-D8-E4-58-CE 192.168.1.10 V 255.255.255.0	Default Geteway: DHCP Server: Lease Obtained:	192.168.1.1 192.168.1.1 Mon Jan 22 01:28:23 2007
	tefresh		DNS Servers:	168.95.1.1	Lease Expires:	Thu Jan 25 01:28:23 2007
DSL Status Mode	·	State	Up Speed	Down Speed	SNR Margin	Loop Att



5.12.6 Time and Date

It allows you to specify where the time of the router should be inquired from.

System Maintenance >> Time and	d Date
Time Information	
Current System Time 20	009 Sep 1 Tue 7 : 48 : 32 Inquire Time
Time Setup	
O Use Browser Time	
Ose Internet Time Client	
Server IP Address	pool.ntp.org
Time Zone	(GMT) Greenwich Mean Time : Dublin
Enable Daylight Saving	
Automatically Update Inter	rval 30 min 💌
Current System Time	Click Inquire Time to get the current time.
Jse Browser Time	Select this option to use the browser time from the remote administrator PC host as router's system time.
Jse Internet Time	Select to inquire time information from Time Server o the Internet using assigned protocol.
Select a time protocol.	
erver IP Address	Type the IP address of the time server.
Time Zone	Select the time zone where the router is located.
utomatically Update Interv	al Select a time interval for updating from the NTP serve
lick OK to save these settings	S.

Dray Tek

5.12.7 Management

This page allows you to manage the settings for access control, access list, port setup, and SMP setup. For example, as to management access control, the port number is used to send/receive SIP message for building a session. The default value is 5060 and this must match with the peer Registrar when making VoIP calls.

Management Setup				
Management Access	Control	Management Port Setup		
Allow management from the Internet		💿 User Define Ports	🔘 Default Ports	
FTP Server		Telnet Port	23 (Default: 23)	
HTTP Server		HTTP Port	80 (Default: 80)	
HTTPS Server		HTTPS Port	443 (Default: 443)	
🗹 Telnet Server		FTP Port	21 (Default: 21)	
□ SSH Server ✓ Disable PING from the Internet		SSH Port	22 (Default: 22)	
Access List		SNMP Setup		
List IP	Subnet Mask	🔲 Enable SNMP Ager	nt	
1	~	Get Community	public	
2	*	Set Community	private	
3	*	Manager Host IP		
		Trap Community	public	
		Notification Host IP		
		Trap Timeout	10 seconds	

System Maintenance >> Management

Allow management from the Internet	Enable the checkbox to allow system administrators to login from the Internet. There are several servers provided by the system to allow you managing the router from Internet. Check the box(es) to specify.
Disable PING from the Internet	Check the checkbox to reject all PING packets from the Internet. For security issue, this function is enabled by default.
Access List	You could specify that the system administrator can only login from a specific host or network defined in the list. A maximum of three IPs/subnet masks is allowed. List IP - Indicate an IP address allowed to login to the router. Subnet Mask - Represent a subnet mask allowed to login to the router.
Default Ports	Check to use standard port numbers for the Telnet and HTTP servers.
User Defined Ports	Check to specify user-defined port numbers for the Telnet, HTTP and FTP servers.
Enable SNMP Agent	Check it to enable this function.
Get Community	Set the name for getting community by typing a proper character. The default setting is public.



Set Community	Set community by typing a proper name. The default setting is private.
Manager Host IP	Set one host as the manager to execute SNMP function. Please type in IP address to specify certain host.
Trap Community	Set trap community by typing a proper name. The default setting is public.
Notification Host IP	Set the IP address of the host that will receive the trap community.
Trap Timeout	The default setting is 10 seconds.

5.12.8 Reboot System

The Web Configurator may be used to restart your router. Click **Reboot System** from **System Maintenance** to open the following page.

System Maintenance >> Reboot System Reboot System			
	Osing current configuration		
	O Using factory default configuration		
	OK		

If you want to reboot the router using the current configuration, check **Using current** configuration and click **OK**. To reset the router settings to default values, check **Using** factory default configuration and click **OK**. The router will take 5 seconds to reboot the system.

Note: When the system pops up Reboot System web page after you configure web settings, please click **OK** to reboot your router for ensuring normal operation and preventing unexpected errors of the router in the future.

5.12.9 Firmware Upgrade

Before upgrading your router firmware, you need to install the Router Tools. The **Firmware Upgrade Utility** is included in the tools. The following web page will guide you to upgrade firmware by using an example. Note that this example is running over Windows OS (Operating System).

Download the newest firmware from DrayTek's web site or FTP site. The DrayTek web site is www.draytek.com (or local DrayTek's web site) and FTP site is ftp.draytek.com.

Click System Maintenance>> Firmware Upgrade to launch the Firmware Upgrade Utility.

System Maintenance >> Firmware Upgrade

Curre	nt Firmware Version: 3.5.0_RC4
Firm	ware Upgrade Procedures:
1.	Open the Firmware Upgrade Utility.
2.	Check that the firmware filename is correct.
3.	Check that the VoIP module file is correct if you need to upgrade it.
4.	Click "Upgrade" on the Firmware Upgrade Utility to start the upgrade.
5.	After the upgrade is compelete, the TFTP server will automatically stop running.

For the detailed information about firmware update, please go to Chapter 4.

Dray Tek

5.13 Diagnostics

Diagnostic Tools provide a useful way to view or diagnose the status of your Vigor router.

Below shows the menu items for Diagnostics.

Diagnostics
Dial-out Trigger
Routing Table
ARP Cache Table
DHCP Table
NAT Sessions Table
Ping Diagnosis
Data Flow Monitor
Traffic Graph
Trace Route

5.13.1 Dial-out Trigger

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Dial-out Trigger** to open the web page. The internet connection (e.g., ISDN, PPPoE, PPPoA, etc) is triggered by a package sending from the source IP address.

Diagnostics >> Dial-out Trigger

 ıt Triggered Packet Header	Refresh
HEX Format:	
00 50 7F 00 00 00-00 0E A6 2A D5 A1-08 00	
45 00 00 30 89 C9 40 00-7F 06 80 01 C0 A8 01 0A	
41 36 EF 14 08 A4 07 47-33 20 94 D1 00 00 00 00	
70 02 FF FF B9 45 00 00-02 04 05 B4 01 01 04 02	
BE 9C 80 C9 9F A8 80 5B-3D D9 80 19 84 68 00 00	
Decoded Format:	
192.168.1.10,2212 -> 65.54.239.20,1863 Pr tcp HLen 20 TLen 48 -S Seq 857773265 Ack 0 Win 65535	

Decoded Format

It shows the source IP address (local), destination IP (remote) address, the protocol and length of the package.

Refresh

Click it to reload the page.

5.13.2 Routing Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Routing Table** to open the web page.

```
Diagnostics >> View Routing Table
Current Running Routing Table
Key: C - connected, S - static, R - RIP, * - default, ~ - private
* 0.0.0.0/ 0.0.0 via 172.16.3.4, WAN2
C~ 192.168.1.0/ 255.255.0 is directly connected, LAN
C 172.16.0.0/ 255.255.0.0 is directly connected, WAN2
```

Refresh

Click it to reload the page.

5.13.3 ARP Cache Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **ARP Cache Table** to view the content of the ARP (Address Resolution Protocol) cache held in the router. The table shows a mapping between an Ethernet hardware address (MAC Address) and an IP address.

Ethernet ARP Cache	Table	<u>Clear</u> <u>Refresh</u>
IP Address	MAC Address	2
192.168.1.10	00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1	
172.16.2.240	00-05-5D-04-D2-C0	
172.16.2.194	00-50-7F-33-31-E9	
172.16.3.237	00-0C-6E-D0-CA-63	
172.16.3.222	00-50-7F-1A-59-11	
172.16.2.209	00-07-40-82-13-77	
172.16.3.181	00-50-7F-1A-58-CF	
172.16.2.238	00-50-7F-C0-29-1D	
172.16.2.62	00-50-7F-28-6E-21	
172.16.3.201	00-50-7F-1C-49-E5	
220.130.52.220	00-50-7F-C1-06-4D	
172.16.3.115	00-1A-92-92-E8-1D	
172.16.2.114	00-50-7F-C0-25-BD	
172.16.3.134	00-50-7F-33-31-E3	
172.16.2.229	00-50-7F-F0-00-5E	

Refresh

Clear

Click it to reload the page.

Click it to clear the whole table.



5.13.4 DHCP Table

The facility provides information on IP address assignments. This information is helpful in diagnosing network problems, such as IP address conflicts, etc.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **DHCP Table** to open the web page.

Diagnostics >> View DHCP Assigned IP Addresses

DHCP se	erver: Running				^
Index	IP Address	MAC Address	Leased Time	HOST ID	
1	192.168.1.10	00-0E-A6-2A-D5-A1	0:00:06.820	ok-leegjyiy075u	

muex	it displays the connection term number.
IP Address	It displays the IP address assigned by this router for specified PC.
MAC Address	It displays the MAC address for the specified PC that DHCP assigned IP address for it.
Leased Time	It displays the leased time of the specified PC.
HOST ID	It displays the host ID name of the specified PC.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

5.13.5 NAT Sessions Table

Click **Diagnostics** and click **NAT Sessions Table** to open the setup page.

Diagnostics >> NAT Sessions Table

Private IP	:Port	#Pseudo Port	Peer IP	:Port	Interface	
92.168.1.10	2473	52059	207.46.106.51	1863	 WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2476	52062	207.46.26.253	7001	WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2477	52063	207.46.26.254	7001	WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2477	52063	207.46.26.254	9	WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2477	52063	207.46.26.253	7001	WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2478	52064	207.68.178.16	80	WAN2	
92.168.1.10	2479	52065	207.68.178.16	80	WAN2	

Private IP:Port

It indicates the source IP address and port of local PC.

#Pseudo Port

It indicates the temporary port of the router used for NAT.



Peer IP:Port	It indicates the destination IP address and port of remote host.
Interface	It displays the representing number for different interface.
Refresh	Click it to reload the page.

5.13.6 Ping Diagnosis

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Ping Diagnosis** to pen the web page. **Diagnostics** >> **Ping Diagnosis**

Note: If you want to ping a LAN PC or you which WAN to ping through, please select	
Ping to: Host / IP 👻 IP Address:	
Host / IP Gateway	
Result DNS	<u>Clear</u>
	~

Ping to	Use the drop down list to choose the destination that you want to ping.
IP Address	Type in the IP address of the Host/IP that you want to ping.
Run	Click this button to start the ping work. The result will be displayed on the screen.
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.



5.13.7 Data Flow Monitor

Diagnostics >> Data Flow Monitor

This page displays the running procedure for the IP address monitored and refreshes the data in an interval of several seconds. The IP address listed here is configured in Bandwidth Management. You have to enable IP bandwidth limit and IP session limit before invoke Data Flow Monitor. If not, a notification dialog box will appear to remind you enabling it.

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Data Flow Monitor** to open the web page. You can click **IP Address**, **TX rate**, **RX rate** or **Session** link for arranging the data display.

		t or Refresh S	econds: 10 💌 Page: 1	*	Refresh
Index	IP Address	TX rate(Kbps)	RX rate(Kbps) V	Sessions	Action

Note: 1. Click "Block" to prevent specified PC from surfing Internet for 5 minutes.

2. The IP blocked by the router will be shown in red, and the session column will display the remaining time that the specified IP will be blocked.

Check this box to enable this function.

Enable Data Flow Monitor

Refresh Seconds

Use the drop down list to choose the time interval of refreshing data flow that will be done by the system automatically.

Refresh Se	conds:	10	*
(Kbps)	RX	10	b
		15	
		30	

Refresh	Click this link to refresh this page manually.
Index	Display the number of the data flow.
IP Address	Display the IP address of the monitored device.
TX rate (kbps)	Display the transmission speed of the monitored device.
RX rate (kbps)	Display the receiving speed of the monitored device.
Sessions	Display the session number that you specified in Limit Session web page.
Action	Block - can prevent specified PC accessing into Internet within 5 minutes.

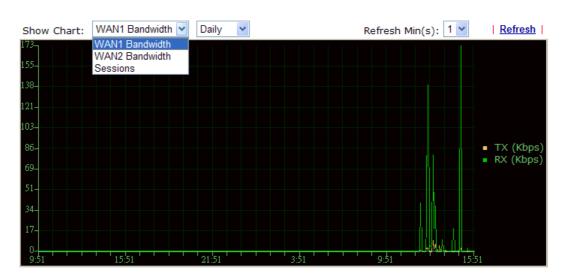
age: 1 💽	*	<u>Refresh</u>
os <u>)</u> 🖂	Sessions	Action
	7	<u>Block</u>

Unblock – the device with the IP address will be blocked in five minutes. The remaining time will be shown on the session column.

age:	1 🛩	<u>Refresh</u>
	Sessions	Action
	blocked / 298	<u>Unblock</u>

5.13.8 Traffic Graph

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Traffic Graph** to pen the web page. Choose WAN1 Bandwidth, Sessions, daily or weekly for viewing different traffic graph. Click **Refresh** to renew the graph at any time.



Diagnostics >> Traffic Graph

5.13.9 Trace Route

Click **Diagnostics** and click **Trace Route** to open the web page. This page allows you to trace the routes from router to the host. Simply type the IP address of the host in the box and click **Run**. The result of route trace will be shown on the screen.

Trace Route			
	Protocol: Host / IP Address:	ICMP	Run
	Result	00.	Clear
			N

Diagnostics >> Trace Route

Protocol	Choose a protocol (ICMP or UDP) for such route.	
Host/IP Address It indicates the IP address of the host.		
Run	Click this button to start route tracing work.	
Clear	Click this link to remove the result on the window.	

Dray Tek

This page is left blank.



Chapter 6: Trouble Shooting

This section will guide you to solve abnormal situations if you cannot access into the Internet after installing the router and finishing the web configuration. Please follow sections below to check your basic installation status stage by stage.

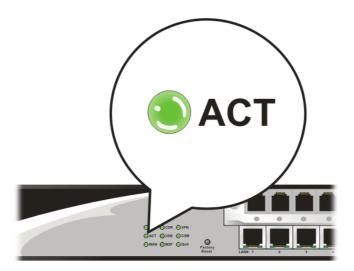
- Checking if the hardware status is OK or not.
- Checking if the network connection settings on your computer are OK or not.
- Pinging the router from your computer.
- Checking if the ISP settings are OK or not.
- Backing to factory default setting if necessary.

If all above stages are done and the router still cannot run normally, it is the time for you to contact your dealer for advanced help.

6.1 Checking If the Hardware Status Is OK or Not

Follow the steps below to verify the hardware status.

- 1. Check the power line and WLAN/LAN cable connections. Refer to "**1.3 Hardware Installation**" for details.
- 2. Turn on the router. Make sure the **ACT LED** blink once per second and the correspondent **LAN LED** is bright.



3. If not, it means that there is something wrong with the hardware status. Simply back to **"1.3 Hardware Installation"** to execute the hardware installation again. And then, try again.

6.2 Checking If the Network Connection Settings on Your Computer Is OK or Not

Sometimes the link failure occurs due to the wrong network connection settings. After trying the above section, if the link is stilled failed, please do the steps listed below to make sure the network connection settings is OK.

For Windows



The example is based on Windows XP. As to the examples for other operation systems, please refer to the similar steps or find support notes in **www.draytek.com**.

1. Go to **Control Panel** and then double-click on **Network Connections**.



2. Right-click on Local Area Connection and click on Properties.



3. Select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) and then click Properties.

General	Authentication	Advanced	
Connec	st using:		
111	ASUSTeK/Broad	dcom 440x 10/100 lr	Configure
This c <u>o</u>	nnection uses th	he following items:	
	Client for Micro File and Printe QoS Packet S	r Sharing for Microso	ft Networks
X	Internet Proto	col (TCP/IP)	
	nstall.,.	Linnetall	Properties
Desc	ription		
wide	area network p	Protocol/Internet Pr rotocol that provides connected networks.	
🛃 Sho	<u>w</u> icon in notific	ation area when con	nected
V Noti	ly <u>m</u> e when this	connection has limit	ed or no connectivity
V Noti	ífy <u>m</u> e when this	connection has limit	ed or no connectivity

4. Select **Obtain an IP address automatically** and **Obtain DNS server address automatically**.

Internet	Protocol (TCP/IP)	Properties 🛛 🛛 🔀
General	Alternate Configuration	
this cap		d automatically if your network supports eed to ask your network administrator for
<u>O</u> D	otain an IP address auto	matically
-O U <u>s</u>	se the following IP addre	ISS:
(Plac	Idress	
Subr	iel mask	
<u>D</u> ela	ull galeway.	
O	gtain DNS server addres	s automatically
OUs	se the following DNS se	rver addresses:
Erete	ared DNS server	
Alten	nate DNS server	
		Advanced
		OK Cancel

For MacOs

- 1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
- 2. Open the **Application** folder and get into **Network**.
- 3. On the **Network** screen, select **Using DHCP** from the drop down list of Configure IPv4.

		Ne	twork		
a 🛋 🛛		()			
how All Dis	plays Sound	Network Startup D	Disk		
	Loca	ation: Automatic		•	
	S	how: Built-in Et	hernet	•	
	TCP/IP	PPPoE Apple	Talk Proxies	Ethernet	
Config	ure IPv4: 🕕	Jsing DHCP		•	
IP /	Address: 1	92.168.1.10		(Renew DHO	CP Lease
Subn	et Mask: 2	55.255.255.0	DHCP Client II	D:	
	Router: 1	92.168.1.1		(If required)	
DNS	Servers:				(Optional)
Search D	Domains:				(Optional)
IPv6	Address: fe	80:0000:0000:000	00:020a:95ff:fe8d	:72e4	
	C	Configure IPv6)		?



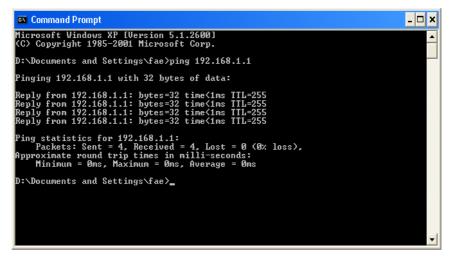
6.3 Pinging the Router from Your Computer

The default gateway IP address of the router is 192.168.1.1. For some reason, you might need to use "ping" command to check the link status of the router. **The most important thing is that the computer will receive a reply from 192.168.1.1.** If not, please check the IP address of your computer. We suggest you setting the network connection as **get IP automatically**. (Please refer to the section 6.2)

Please follow the steps below to ping the router correctly.

For Windows

- 1. Open the **Command** Prompt window (from **Start menu> Run**).
- 2. Type **command** (for Windows 95/98/ME) or **cmd** (for Windows NT/ 2000/XP). The DOS command dialog will appear.



- 3. Type ping 192.168.1.1 and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of **"Reply from 192.168.1.1:bytes=32 time<1ms TTL=255"** will appear.
- 4. If the line does not appear, please check the IP address setting of your computer.

For MacOs (Terminal)

- 1. Double click on the current used MacOs on the desktop.
- 2. Open the Application folder and get into Utilities.
- 3. Double click **Terminal**. The Terminal window will appear.
- 4. Type **ping 192.168.1.1** and press [Enter]. If the link is OK, the line of **"64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=xxxx ms**" will appear.



000	Terminal = bash - 80x24	
Welcome to Darwin! Vigor18:~ draytek\$ p PING 192.168.1.1 (19 64 bytes from 192.16 64 bytes from 192.16 64 bytes from 192.16 64 bytes from 192.16	3 02:24:18 on ttyp1 ing 192.168.1.1 2.168.1.1): 56 data bytes 8.1.1: icmp_seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.755 ms 8.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.697 ms 8.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.716 ms 8.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=255 time=0.731 ms 8.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=255 time=0.72 ms	8
the second se	d, 5 packets received, 0% packet loss ax = 0.697/0.723/0.755 mš	

6.4 Checking If the ISP Settings are OK or Not

Open Internet Access page and then check whether the ISP settings are set correctly.

WAN >> Internet Access

Internet Access			
Access Mode			
Static or Dynamic IP 🔽 🛛 Details Page			
None PPPoE Details Page			
Static or Dynamic IP PPTP/L2TP			

For PPPoE Users

- 1. Check if the **Enable** option is selected.
- 2. Check if **Username** and **Password** are entered with correct values that you **got from** your **ISP**.

WAN 1 PPPoE Client Mode	PPP/MP Setup
● Enable ○ Disable	PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP 🗸
ISP Access Setup	Idle Timeout -1 second(s)
Username 84005755@hinet.net Password ••••	IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) WAN IP Alias Fixed IP: O Yes O No (Dynamic IP)
Index(1 15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup: =>,,,,,	Fixed IP Address
WAN Connection Detection Mode ARP Detect Ping IP TTL:	 Default MAC Address Specify a MAC Address MAC Address: .50 .7F :00 .00 .01

WAN >> Internet Access



For Static/Dynamic IP Users

- 1. Check if the **Enable** option is selected.
- 2. Check if **Obtain an IP address automatically** for Dynamic IP setting is selected. Or check if **IP address, Subnet Mask** and **Gateway** are entered with correct values for Static IP setting that you **got from** your **ISP**.

Dhatla an Duman-la TD		
Static or Dynamic IP		WAN IP Network Settings WAN IP Alias
💽 Enable 🔘 Disa	ble	Obtain an IP address automatically
Keep WAN Connectio	on	Router Name
Enable PING to kee		Domain Name
PING to the IP		* : Required for some ISPs
		O Specify an IP address
PING Interval	0 minute(s)	IP Address
WAN Connection Det	action	Subnet Mask
Mode	ARP Detect V	Gateway IP Address
	ARF Delect	Gateway IF Address
Ping IP		DNS Server IP Address
TTL:		Primary IP Address
RIP Protocol		Secondary IP Address
Enable RIP		
		Default MAC Address
		Specify a MAC Address
		MAC Address:

For PPTP/L2TP Users

- 1. Check if the **Enable** option for **PPTP** Link is selected.
- 2. Check if **PPTP Server, Username, Password** and **WAN IP address** are set correctly (must identify with the values from your ISP).

PPTP/L2TP Client Mode	PPP Setup
◯ Enable PPTP ③ Enable L2TP ◯ Disable	PPP Authentication PAP or CHAP 🗸
Server Address 10.0.0.138	Idle Timeout -1 second(s)
Specify Gateway IP Address	IP Address Assignment Method (IPCP) WAN IP Alias
	Fixed IP: O Yes O No (Dynamic IP)
ISP Access Setup	Fixed IP Address
Jsername	WAN IP Network Settings
Password	 Obtain an IP address automatically
Index(1-15) in <u>Schedule</u> Setup:	Specify an IP address
=>,,,	IP Address 10.0.0.150
	Subnet Mask 255.0.0.0

WAN >> Internet Access



6.5 Backing to Factory Default Setting If Necessary

Sometimes, a wrong connection can be improved by returning to the default settings. Try to reset the router by software or hardware.



Warning: After pressing **factory default setting**, you will loose all settings you did before. Make sure you have recorded all useful settings before you pressing. The password of factory default is null.

Software Reset

You can reset the router to factory default via Web page.

Go to **System Maintenance** and choose **Reboot System** on the web page. The following screen will appear. Choose **Using factory default configuration** and click **OK**. After few seconds, the router will return all the settings to the factory settings.

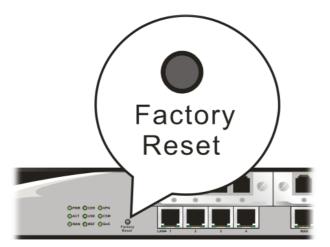
System Maintenance >> Reboot System		
Reboot System		
	Do you want to reboot your router ?	
	Osing current configuration	

O Using factory default configuration

ОК

Hardware Reset

While the router is running (ACT LED blinking), press the **Factory Reset** button and hold for more than 5 seconds. When you see the **ACT** LED blinks rapidly, please release the button. Then, the router will restart with the default configuration.



After restore the factory default setting, you can configure the settings for the router again to fit your personal request.

6.6 Contacting Your Dealer

If the router still cannot work correctly after trying many efforts, please contact your dealer for further help right away. For any questions, please feel free to send e-mail to support@draytek.com.

Dray Tek

This page is left blank.

Dray Tek

Appendix: Hardware Specifications

Temperature	Operating : 0°C ~ 45°C
	Storage : -25° C ~ 70° C
Humidity	10% ~ 90% (non-condensing)
Max. Power Consumption	10 Watt
Dimension	L241 * W165 * H44 (mm)
Power	DC 12V ~ 15V